

Getting started

This section includes the following topics:

- [About Arctera Management Console](#)
- [Prerequisites for using Arctera Management Console](#)
- [Arctera Management Console web browser support](#)
- [What's new in this release](#)
- [Signing in to Arctera Management Console](#)
- [Signing out from Arctera Management Console](#)
- [Resetting a forgotten password](#)
- [Changing your profile password](#)

About Arctera Management Console

Arctera Unified Platform is a cloud-based archiving service that lets your organization store, manage, supervise, and discover all of your business-critical communications. Once your organization enables the service, it can journal a copy of all the messages that are sent and received within your organization to Arctera Unified Platform.

Arctera Management Console is a web-hosted interface that enables administrators to configure and manage Arctera Unified Platform and perform the following tasks:

- Provision and manage Arctera Unified Platform archive accounts.
- Configure and manage the archiving of content sources.
- Assign and manage user roles.
- Manage archiving options and policies.
- Manage retention policies and tags.
- Configure classification for all content that meets the enabled classification policies.
- Manage the Email Continuity option.
- Generate usage reports.

Recent updates to Arctera Management Console include the following enhancements:

- With the Import Data feature in Arctera Management Console, you can import legacy email into the archive. Every company has existing emails, whether located in the active user mailboxes, personal stores, document management systems, or other communication libraries. You can consolidate some or all of these legacy email sources into your archive.
- Delegates can now view the mailbox folder structure. Administrators can control whether the delegates can view the mailbox folder structure using Arctera Management Console.
- Administrators can remotely manage account provisioning and sync users from CloudLink, Microsoft Office 365, or Google Workspace, and SCIM. If users exist solely in one environment, their archives will not be overwritten or removed during synchronization.
- Administrators can configure the Privilege Delete archive options and determine whether Arctera eDiscovery Administrator is enabled to delete emails in Arctera eDiscovery permanently.
- With the enhancements in the built-in administrator roles, you cannot edit the System administrator role's permissions. Only the Share Export, Download Export, and Privilege Delete permissions can be edited for the Arctera eDiscovery Administrator role.
- With the enhancements in reports, administrators can now create a Arctera eDiscovery Report and a Mail Reassignment status report. The 7-Day Rolling Attachment Summary and 7-Day Rolling by User report are no longer available. The Messaging Report now shows charts for the Number of emails imported and the Size of emails imported and contains a Summary for the selected period.
- The passwords must be minimum of 8 characters long for enhanced security instead of the earlier policy of 6 characters long passwords.
- Office 365 Sync provisioning has been enhanced to include more options, such as Synchronize User Name from: Email Address and User Principal Name and Archive Provisioning: Provision Dynamic Distribution Lists.
- The application supports multi-factor authentication (MFA). The email-based authentication and the Time-based One Time Password (TOTP) authentication enhances the access and data security of Management Console.
- The New Features window displays users the latest release updates for all Arctera Unified Platform applications every time they log in. It can be disabled or enabled for users, if needed.

Information about the changes that were included with earlier releases of Arctera Management Console is provided elsewhere in this help.

For details of all the updates in each release of the Arctera Unified Platform service suite, see the [Arctera Unified Platform Documentation](#).

Prerequisites for using Arctera Management Console

To use Arctera Management Console, you need the following:

- Your Arctera Management Console URL.
- Your Arctera Unified Platform user name.
- Your Arctera Unified Platform password.
- Access permission to use Arctera Management Console.

Note: Contact your administrator if you do not have this information or you need access permission for Arctera Management Console.

Arctera Management Console web browser support

Arctera Management Console supports the web browsers that are listed in the Arctera Unified Platform Compatibility List. You can obtain the Compatibility List from this [article](#) on the Arctera Support website.

What's new in this release

Arctera constantly works on improving the Arctera Unified Platform product and introduces new features and enhancements release by release. For an easy-to-reference source for all the ways the product is changing, refer to the [Arctera Unified Platform Documentation](#).

Signing in to Arctera Management Console

Before you access Arctera Management Console, you must log in using your Arctera Unified Platform credentials.

To log in to Arctera Management Console:

1. In a supported browser, enter the Arctera Management Console URL.

Note: Starting with this release (April 2026), the application is available on a new domain. If you access the application using a URL with the previous domain, an informational page appears.

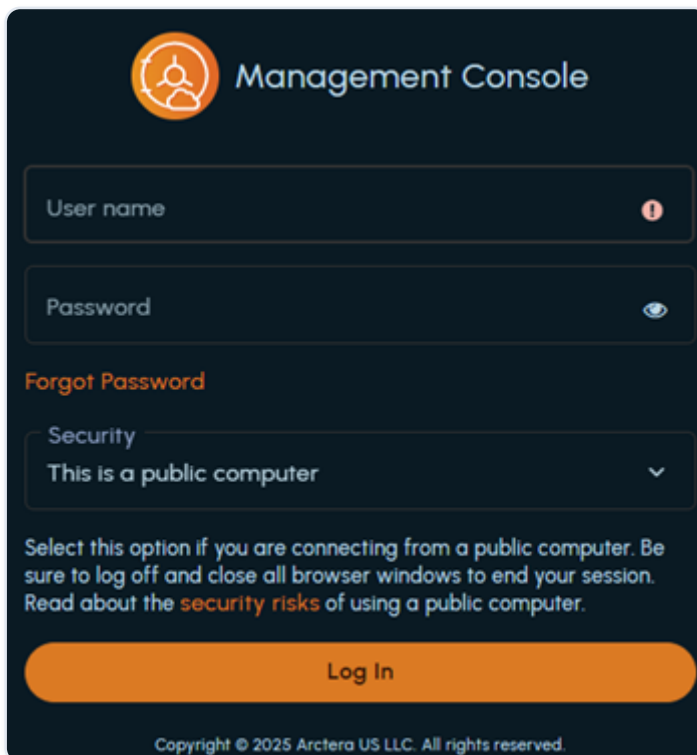
We've Moved to a New Domain !

You'll be automatically redirected in a few seconds.
If the redirect does not occur, please click [here](#).

⚠ **Note:** Please bookmark this URL for future access: <https://admin.qa.arctera.com/>

The previously used URL is expected to automatically redirect you to the current application URL. If the automatic redirection does not occur, click the link provided on the page to continue. Do not bookmark the URL accessed through the *click here* link. To avoid future access issues, bookmark the new application URL provided in the note on the page.

Contact your administrator if you do not know your Arctera Management Console URL or you need access permission for Arctera Management Console. For more information on supported browsers, see [Arctera Unified Platform Compatibility List](#).



The image shows the Arctera Management Console login interface. At the top is the Arctera logo (an orange circle with a white icon) and the text "Management Console". Below this are two input fields: "User name" with an orange information icon on the right, and "Password" with an orange eye icon on the right. Under the password field is a link "Forgot Password" in orange. Below that is a "Security" section with a dropdown menu currently showing "This is a public computer". A note below the dropdown reads: "Select this option if you are connecting from a public computer. Be sure to log off and close all browser windows to end your session. Read about the **security risks** of using a public computer." At the bottom is a large orange "Log In" button. The footer text says "Copyright © 2025 Arctera US LLC. All rights reserved."

2. Enter your username and password on the authentication screen.

Note: Consecutive incorrect password entries lock your account. If you forget your password, you can reset it. See [Resetting a forgotten password](#).

3. Under **Security**, select a security option.

Refer to the following table for more information:

THIS IS A PUBLIC COMPUTER	ARCTERA MANAGEMENT CONSOLE PROMPTS YOU FOR YOUR CREDENTIALS EACH TIME YOU ACCESS THE LOGIN PAGE AND AUTOMATICALLY LOGS YOU OUT AFTER 20 MINUTES OF INACTIVITY. THIS OPTION IS THE DEFAULT OPTION SELECTED. IF THE ONGOING SESSION ON THE PUBLIC COMPUTER REMAINS IDLE FOR 20 MINUTES, THE APPLICATION DISPLAYS AN ALERT TO EXTEND THE SESSION. • CLICK EXTEND TO EXTEND THE SESSION WITHIN 60 SECONDS. ELSE, THE SESSION ENDS AUTOMATICALLY. AFTER YOU EXTEND THE SESSION, THE SESSION TIMEOUT INTERVAL IS SET TO ANOTHER 20 MINUTES OF THE IDLE SESSION. • CLICK END TO END THE SESSION.
This is a private computer	Arctera Management Console caches your credentials for one year and lets you bypass the Login page after you log in successfully. To clear your credentials from the cache, log out of Arctera Management Console. Arctera Management Console automatically logs you out after 10 hours of inactivity. If the ongoing session on the private computer remains idle for 10 hours, the application displays an alert to extend the session. • Click Extend to extend the session within 60 seconds. Else, the session ends automatically. After you extend the session, the session timeout interval is set to another 10 hours of the idle session. • Click End to end the session.

4. Click **Sign In**
5. If the multi-factor authentication (MFA) is enabled for you, the **OTP** field appears on the authentication screen.

This email-based authentication and the Time-based One Time Password (TOTP) authentication enhances the access and data security of Management Console. Administrators

have the permission to enable or disable multi-factor authentication at the user and tenant level.

- If the **email-based authentication** (EML) is enabled for you, a one-time password (OTP) is sent to your registered email address for authentication and access to the application. This OTP remains valid for 5 minutes from the time of receiving the email.

Manually enter the OTP on the authentication screen within 5 minutes. Copy-pasting the OTP is not allowed. If you fail to provide OTP within 5 minutes of receiving it, the application displays a message that the OTP has expired. To obtain a new OTP, click **Resend OTP**. The application sends a new OTP.

- If the **Time-based One Time Password authentication**(TOTP) is enabled for you, the application redirects you to an **Authenticator Setup** page.

Scan the QR Code using the Google or Microsoft **Authenticator** app on your mobile phone at the time of your first login.

Configure the Authenticator app on your mobile phone. See [Configuring the Authenticator app on your mobile phone](#).

Click **Continue** to get a time-based OTP in the Authenticator app.

Enter that OTP in the **OTP** field of the Authentication page, and click **Continue**.

Configuring the Authenticator app on your mobile phone

Note: If you have previously created an account for same user, please remove that entry and attempt to complete the setup again.

To install the Microsoft Authenticator app on your phone:

1. While installing the app, if prompted, allow notifications about the app.
2. Upon installation, open the app and click the plus (+) icon at top and select **Work or School account** or **Other account**.
3. Add your work account by using any of the following methods:
 - Use the installed authenticator app to scan the QR Code provided on the authentication page of Arctera Unified Platform application.
 - Sign in with your application credentials and follow the screen instructions.

Upon successful scanning or signing in, your account gets connected to Microsoft Authenticator.

To install the Google Authenticator app on your phone:

1. While installing the app, if prompted, allow notifications about the app.
2. Upon installation, log in with your Google account credentials. Scroll down and click the plus (+) icon.
3. Scan the QR Code with the Google Authenticator app. Your account gets connected to the Google Authenticator app.

Resetting the Authenticator device for users

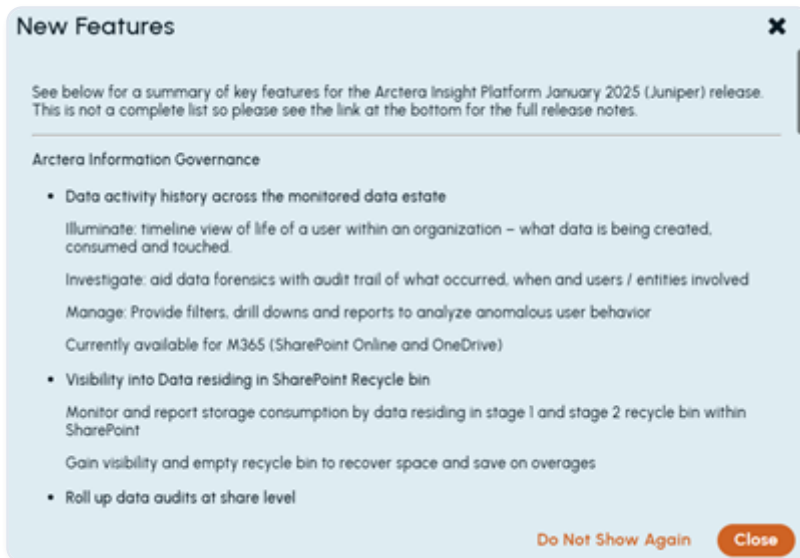
As an administrator, you can reset the Authenticator device for users if the user accidentally removes the account from authenticator app or misplaces the device on which the app is installed. Users can request you to setting up a new device at the next login.

To reset the Authenticator device for a user:

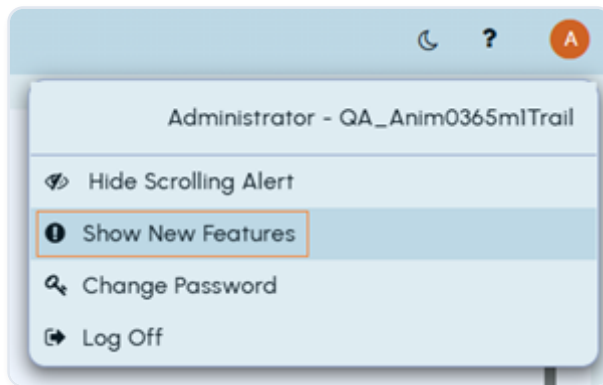
1. On the Arctera Management Console, select **Configuration > Account Management**.
2. Search for and select the account for which you want to reset the Authenticator device.
3. Click **Edit** to view the user account details.
4. Under the **Status** section, click **Remove** adjacent to the **Authenticator Device** field.

About the New Features updates

Upon successful sign-in, the New Features window appears, presenting the latest release updates for Arctera Management Console, Arctera eDiscovery, Arctera Personal Archive, Arctera Capture, and Arctera Surveillance as shown in the sample image below.



- To temporarily hide this window, click Close.
- To access this window later, click the profile icon and choose Show New Features.



- To permanently hide this window, click **Do Not Show Again**. Subsequently, upon next login, this window will no longer appear. To enable its visibility, contact your system administrator. However, it will reappear automatically with the next release updates.
- To read the complete release notes document, click **View Detailed Release Notes**.

Signing out from Arctera Management Console

To sign out from the current session:

1. In the top-right corner of the page, click the user profile icon.
2. Click **Log Off**

Important: If the ongoing session on the public computer remains idle for 20 minutes or the session on the private computer remains idle for 10 hours, the application displays an alert to extend the session.

- Click **Extend** to extend the session within 60 seconds. Else, the session ends automatically. After you extend the session, the session timeout interval is set to another 20 minutes for the public computers and 10 hours for the private computers of the idle session.
- Click **End** to close the session immediately.

Resetting a forgotten password

If you forget your password and need help resetting it, Arctera Management Console can help you by sending a Reset Password link to your authenticated user name (email address).

To reset your forgotten password:

1. On the authentication screen, click the **Forgot your password** link.
2. In the **User Name** field, provide your user name (email address).
3. In the **Validation Code** field, enter the correct captcha from the image, without spaces. Letters are not case-sensitive.

Note: You cannot sign in if your archive fails to authorize your location or computer. You can contact system administrator for assistance.

4. Click **Send**.

The application sends you an email with a reset password link. Check your email inbox, including the spam or junk folder, for this message. This link expires after 30 minutes from you receive the email.

5. Open the password reset email and click on the provided **Reset Password** link.

The application directs you to a **Reset Password** page.

6. Type your user name, a new password, retype to confirm it, and click **Submit**

After successful reset, you receive an email notification that your password has been changed successfully.

Changing your profile password

You can change the password that you use to access Arctera Management Console whenever required. If your organization uses the default password policy, your new password must be at least eight characters long. In addition, your password must include two of the following character types:

- A number between 0 and 9
- A lowercase letter
- An uppercase letter
- A non-alphanumeric character

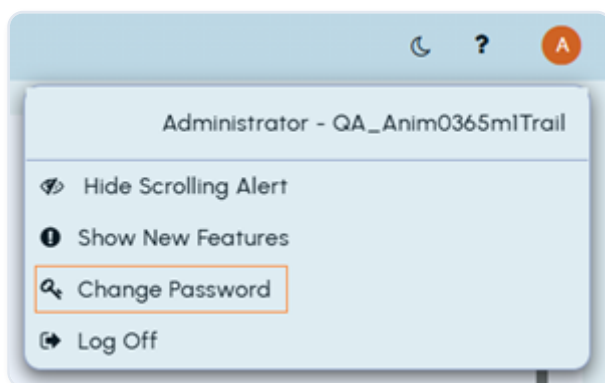
If your organization uses an advanced password policy, your new password must meet the requirements of that policy.

See [Configuring an advanced password policy](#).

Note: Changing your password for Arctera Management Console also changes your password for other Arctera Unified Platform products.

To change your password:

1. In the top-right corner of the page, click on your user profile icon.



2. Click **Change Password**
3. On the **Password Change** page, in the **Old Password** field, enter your current password.
4. In the **New Password** field, enter your new password.
5. In the **Confirm Password** field, enter your new password again.
6. Click **Save**

Archive Overview

This section includes the following topics:

- [About Archive Overview](#)
- [Viewing the Archive Usage Snapshot report](#)

About Archive Overview

The Archive Overview page automatically displays when you log on to Arctera Management Console. This page provides general information and usage statistics for Arctera Unified Platform. The information available from the Archive Overview includes the following in a tabbed layout:

- Archive Usage
 - The services that your company has purchased, and the usage for which you are currently billed in a dashboard format.
 - The table view shows minimum and actual number of users as well as the total usage percentage.
 - The chart view provides two horizontal bars.
 - The green bar shows the quota of users.
 - The red bar shows the actual count of users of that group.
 - The current company contact details that Arctera can use to contact a system administrator or billing contact with product-specific updates. These contact details can also be accessed from a tab on the Account Management page.
 - You can still automatically provision users to the archive when you reach 100% of usage quota. Note that you are charged for those users monthly in arrears. When the service alert pop-up appears, click Acknowledge to dismiss the alert and continuing using the Arctera Management Console . When the alert is acknowledged, the Service Alert does not pop up again on subsequent logons into Manage. If you exceed the usage count again, a new pop-up appears.

Note: When your usage approaches your usage quota, your administrators receive a daily email notification from Arctera to logon to Manage and click **Acknowledge** on the service alert pop-up.

- Archive usage snapshot offers

A series of tables and graphs that present a snapshot of your company's archive usage. The archive usage snapshot includes the following information:

- 10-Day Rolling Mail Volume
- Top ten Unprovisioned Accounts
- Sync Activity

This tab is populated only if you have setup either Exchange Online Sync or CloudLink.

- On this tab, you can view the most recent sync details, last sync date and number of active vs. inactive accounts.
- If a sync has not occurred in 30 days a warning is displayed.
- To view the latest status of your provisioned archive collectors, click **see details**. The application navigates you to the Archive Collector page.
- Roles
- The delegated roles to which your account is assigned.

Archive Usage

This page provides contact details that Arctera can use to contact a system administrator or a billing department for the product-specific updates. These contact details can also be accessed from a tab on the Account Management page.

To edit the contact details:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Overview**
2. On the **Archive Usage** tab, click **Edit Contact Details**
3. Click **Edit** to enable the page for editing.
4. Update the contact details, and click **Save** This page provides the current services that you have purchased and the usage for which you are being billed. The information is provided in a dashboard (tables and graphs) formats.

Table view shows minimum and actual number of users as well as the total usage percentage. The chart view provides two horizontal bars. The green bar shows the quota of users, whereas, the red bar shows the actual count of users of that group.

Even if you reach 100% of usage quota, you can still automatically provision users to the archive .However, you are charged for those users monthly in arrears. When the service alert pop-up appears, click Acknowledge to dismiss the alert and continuing using the Arctera Management Console . When the alert is acknowledged, the Service Alert does not pop up again on subsequent logons into Arctera Management Console . If you exceed the usage count again, a new pop-up appears.

Note: When your usage approaches your usage quota, your administrators receive a daily email notification from Arctera to logon to Arctera Management Console and click Acknowledge on the service alert pop-up.

Archive usage snapshot offers a series of tables and graphs that present a snapshot of your company's archive usage. The archive usage snapshot includes the following information:

- 10-Day Rolling Mail Volume
- Top ten unprovisioned accounts

Sync Activity

This tab is displayed only if you have set up either Exchange Online Sync or CloudLink.

On this page, you can view -

- the most recent sync details
- last sync date
- number of active and inactive accounts
- A warning message if a sync has not occurred in 30 days

To view the [Exchange Online or CloudLink Config](#) page, click see details under the respective sections.

Roles

This page displays the delegated roles to which your account is assigned.

Viewing the Archive Usage Snapshot report

In addition to the information available from the Archive Usage page, you can access the Archive Usage Snapshot report for Arctera Unified Platform. The information available from the Full Archive Usage Report includes the following:

- 10-Day Rolling Mail Volume report.
- 5-Month Rolling Mail Volume report.
- Total MTD Mail Usage Accounts report.
- 7-Day Rolling Un-provisioned Accounts report.
- Weekly Summary User Activity report.
- Detail 7-Day User Activity report.

Note: In the 7-Day Rolling by User Activity report, External users represent message senders outside your organization sending messages to recipients in your organization. Unrecognized users represent recipients in your organization with the Admin and Unassigned user names. These user names represent the default administrator and unassigned legacy accounts for Arctera Unified Platform.

To view the Archive Usage Snapshot report:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Archive Overview**
2. On the **Archive Usage** tab, click **View Full Report**

Working with Dashboard

This section includes the following topics:

- [About dashboard](#)
- [Monitoring a status of active archives](#)
- [Monitoring storage consumption](#)
- [Monitoring a status of Arctera Capture collectors activities](#)
- [Monitoring a status of AI Wallet usage](#)
- [Monitoring consumption across Blended Meter components](#)

About dashboard

To view the dashboard, ensure you have Arctera Unified Platform administrator privileges and that both the Arctera Capture primary service and the necessary secondary services are enabled for your account. For example, if you are the administrator with the Arctera Capture primary service enabled, and only the Viva Engage and Bloomberg secondary services are enabled, you can view and export statistical reports for Viva Engage and Bloomberg importers/collectors only. You will not be able to view statistics for importers/collectors of other secondary services that are not enabled.

Based on the services enabled for you, dashboard displays the following tabs:

- Archive tab

See [Monitoring a status of active archives](#).

See [Monitoring storage consumption](#).

- Capture tab

See [Monitoring a status of Arctera Capture collectors activities](#).

- Transcription tab
- AI Wallet

See [Monitoring a status of AI Wallet usage](#).

- Consumption tab

See [Monitoring consumption across Blended Meter components](#).

Note: If you cannot view the tabs despite having the services enabled, please contact Arctera Support.

For more information about Arctera Capture Dashboard, see [Arctera Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

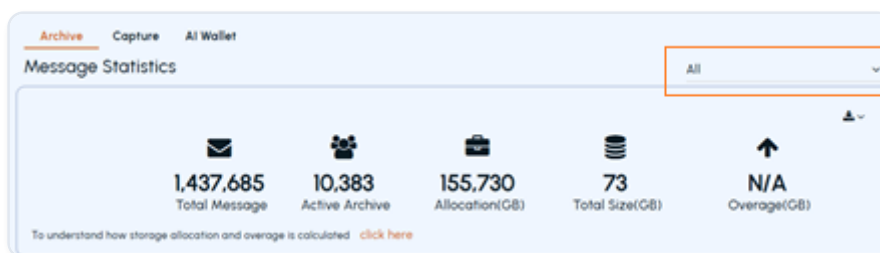
Monitoring a status of active archives

The Archive tab provides statistics about active archives, storage allocation, storage size, storage overage, and more. This statistical data can be exported for analysis or reporting purposes.

Each day, when the Archive dashboard is used to gather statistics for a specified duration, the application fetches only the initial call of the day to query Elasticsearch for data regarding each *date-groupID-period* combination. This data is then stored in a database. Subsequent calls for the same day retrieve data directly from the database, thereby enhancing the performance of the Archive Dashboard.

To monitor a status of active archives and export its statistical report:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Dashboard** and select the **Archive** tab.
2. In the top-right corner of the page, select the duration for which you want to view the archiving statistics.



By default, message statistics duration is set to **All**, and display the **Overage** details. Upon selecting other predefined durations, the application hides the **Overage** details.

The following statistical data is displayed numerically and graphically. To view the message count in numbers and the corresponding percentage ratio, hover over the colored area of the chart.

Note: Refer to a sample image of the Archive tab components for better visual reference.

MESSAGE STATISTICS
Total Messages
Active Archive
Allocation(GB)
Total Size
Overage(GB)
Distribution By Attachment
Count By Message Size
Distribution By Message Format Type
Count By Direction Type
Storage Consumption By Age
Active Archives Over 12 Months
Total Size Over 12 Months (in GB)
Top Mail Accounts (For Emails only)

3. Click the **Export** icon to export the report in Excel, PDF, CSV, or Word format.

Monitoring storage consumption

It is advisable to regularly monitor your storage utilization to ensure compliance with records retention policies and minimize additional storage costs. This process facilitates the evaluation of data longevity, enabling you to modify storage retention settings or perform a defensible manual data clean-up. In addition, it helps determine whether storage usage falls within the allocated Shared Storage Allowance.

To monitor storage consumption:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Dashboard** and select the **Archive** tab.

2. In the top-right corner of the **Message Statistics** section, select the **All** option in the duration drop-down list.

Note: The Storage Consumption By Age section appears only if the message statistics duration is set to All. For other predefined duration options, the application does not show this section.

The storage consumption chart is displayed and shows total and year-wise storage consumption (GB), helping make data-driven decisions.

Monitoring a status of Arctera Capture collectors activities

The Capture tab provides activities of your Arctera Capture collectors/importers for a specified duration. This statistical data can be exported in CSV file format for analysis or reporting purposes.

For more information about Arctera Capture collectors/importers, see [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

To monitor a status of Arctera Capture collectors activities and exporting its statistical report:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Dashboard** and select the **Capture** tab.

IMPORTER JOBS	THIS STATISTIC PROVIDES INFORMATION ABOUT THE IMPORT JOBS FOR ALL OR THE SELECTED COLLECTOR TYPE.
	YOU CAN CUSTOMIZE THE DATE RANGE TO GET THE RECORDS FOR A SPECIFIC DURATION.
Monitored users by source	This statistic provides information about the number of monitored users for each source.
Messages processed by Arctera Capture	This statistic provides information about the number of imported, excluded, and failed messages in certain duration. For example, 7 days.
	You can print and download the charts as PNG, JPEG, PDF, and SVG Vector format.

IMPORTER JOBS	THIS STATISTIC PROVIDES INFORMATION ABOUT THE IMPORT JOBS FOR ALL OR THE SELECTED COLLECTOR TYPE.
	YOU CAN CUSTOMIZE THE DATE RANGE TO GET THE RECORDS FOR A SPECIFIC DURATION.
Number of messages by importer	This statistic provides information about number of messages by each importer.

2. In the **Importers Jobs** pane, do the following:

- In the **Collectors List** field, either select a specific collector to view data for that individual collector, or choose *All* to view statistics for all collectors simultaneously.
- In the **Date Range** field, select the duration for which you want to export the statistics.

3. Click **Export to CSV**

The application downloads the statistical report (**Dashboard.csv**) in the **Downloads** folder of your computer.

Monitoring a status of AI Wallet usage

The AI Wallet tab displays statistics for total AI units deposited, withdrawn, and the current balance, and lists recent AI-unit transactions from Arctera Surveillance, Arctera eDiscovery, and Arctera Personal Archive across different services. This statistical data can be exported in CSV file format for analysis or reporting purposes.

To monitor a status of AI Units usage and exporting its statistical report:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Dashboard** and select the **AI Wallet** tab. Refer to a [sample image](#) for better visualization.

The header of the page provides the following details:

- **AI Units Deposited** — cumulative units credited to the customer.
- **AI Units Withdrawn** — cumulative units consumed by the customer.
- **AI Units Balance** — remaining units available for the customer.

The tabbed transaction panel provides the following details:

- **Recent Withdrawals** — This tab displays the five latest transactions/records. It includes the transaction date indicating when AI units were debited or credited, the name of the source application that consumed the AI units, and the feature responsible for the consumption. It also shows the number of AI units debited (in red) or credited (in green) and the resulting AI units balance after each transaction.
- **Recent Deposits** — This tab displays the five latest transactions/records. It includes the transaction date when AI units were credited, the credit type (such as recharged or free credits), the number of AI units added (shown in green), and the updated AI units balance after each deposit.
- **Top Withdrawers** — This tab displays the five latest records. It includes the user names and email addresses of the accounts that have consumed the highest number of AI units. It also shows the total AI units withdrawn by each user.

2. To check the detailed transaction report, select **Click Here**

The application navigates you to the **AI Wallet Statement** tab on the **Usage Scorecard** page. Refer to a [sample image](#) for better visualization.

3. On the filter options pane, specify the criteria to get the statement.

FILTER FACET	DESCRIPTION
Select Duration	Select a predefined time period or a custom range for transactions.
Applications	Select all or a specific application for which you want the statement.
Features	Select all or a specific feature for which you want the statement. Currently, There are two options: • Audio Summary • InsightBooks
Transaction Types	Select all or a specific transaction type for which you want the statement. Currently, There are two options: • Only deposits • Only withdrawal
Filter Accounts	Click Filter Accounts . The Add/Remove Accounts dialog box appears.

FILTER FACET	DESCRIPTION
	Search for and select one or more accounts, and click Save . The count of selected accounts appears.

4. Click **Apply** The AI Wallet statement is generated based on the selected criteria.

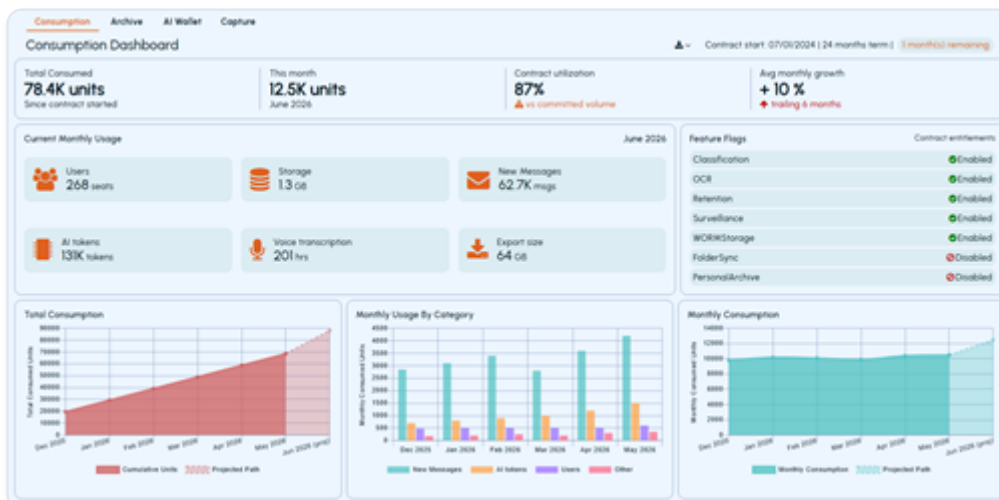
Monitoring consumption across Blended Meter components

The **Consumption** tab on the **Management Console > Dashboard** provides real-time visibility into usage across the **Blended Meter components** and how that usage draws against the consumption entitlement for the active subscription term.

The Blended Meter includes the following consumption components:

- Users
- Storage
- New Messages
- AI Tokens
- Voice Transcription
- Export Size

The page displays several sections (numerical and graphical representation of data). Refer to the sample images below.



- **Download icon:** Lets you download the available consumption-specific report to Excel, PDF, CSV, and MS Word format.



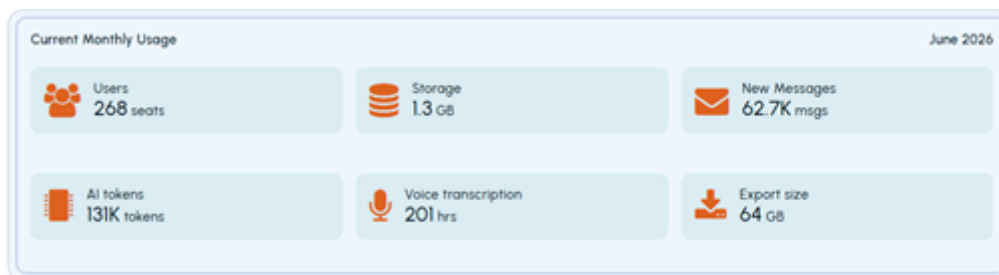
Contract start: 07/01/2024 | 24 months term | 1 month(s) remaining

- **Contract summary:** Displays the contract start date, contract duration, and the remaining contract period. Refer to the sample screenshot above.
- **Consumption summary:** Provides a high-level view of consumption for the current contract term.



FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Total Consumed	Displays the total number of consumption units recorded since the contract term started.
This month	Displays the number of consumption units recorded during the current month. The month and year appear below the value.
Contract utilization	Displays the percentage of the committed volume that has been consumed during the current contract term. A warning indicator appears when utilization requires attention.
Avg monthly growth	Displays the average month-over-month growth in consumption over the trailing six-month period. An upward indicator shows an increase in consumption.

- **Current Monthly Usage summary:** Displays usage recorded for each Blended Meter component during the selected month. The month and year appear in the upper-right corner of the section.



COMPONENT	DESCRIPTION
Users	Displays the number of user seats recorded for the month.
Storage	Displays the amount of storage used for the month, in GB.
New Messages	Displays the number of new messages recorded for the month.
AI tokens	Displays the number of AI tokens consumed during the month.
Voice transcription	Displays the number of hours of voice transcription recorded during the month.
Export size	Displays the total size of exported data for the month, in GB.

- **Contract entitlements:** Displays the features included in the active contract and their current entitlement status whether it is *Enabled* or *Disabled* in contract.

Feature Flags	Contract entitlements
Classification	✔ Enabled
OCR	✔ Enabled
Retention	✔ Enabled
Surveillance	✔ Enabled
WORMStorage	✔ Enabled
FolderSync	✘ Disabled
PersonalArchive	✘ Disabled

- **Total Consumption chart:** Displays the cumulative consumption units recorded over the contract period. It helps you review the growth in total consumption over time and compare recorded consumption with the projected consumption path.

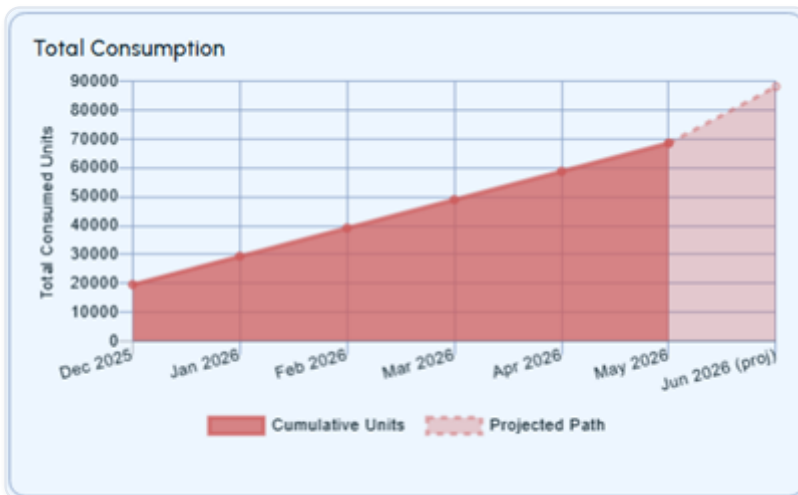


CHART ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
Total Consumed Units	Represents the cumulative number of consumption units recorded up to each month.
Cumulative Units	Displays the recorded cumulative consumption as a solid shaded area.
Projected Path	Displays the projected cumulative consumption for a future period as a dotted shaded area.
Month	Identifies the month associated with each consumption value. A projected month is marked as projected on the horizontal axis.

- **Monthly Usage by Category chart:** Displays the consumption recorded for each usage category by month. It enables you to compare monthly consumption across categories and identify changes in usage over time. Each category is represented by a separate bar within the monthly group, allowing you to compare category-level consumption for the same month and review trends across the displayed period.

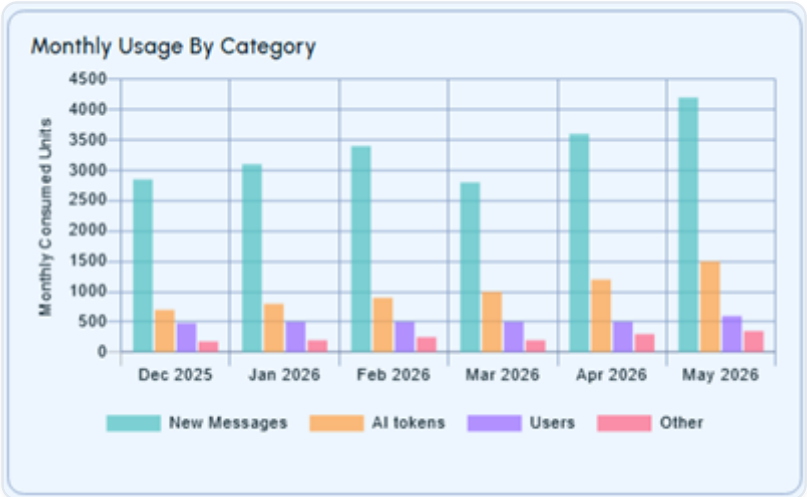


CHART ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
Monthly Consumed Units	Represents the number of consumption units recorded for each category during a month.
New Messages	Displays the monthly consumption attributed to new messages.
AI tokens	Displays the monthly consumption attributed to AI token usage.
Users	Displays the monthly consumption attributed to users.
Other	Displays the combined monthly consumption attributed to categories that are not shown separately in the chart.
Month	Identifies the month associated with each set of category values.

- **Monthly Consumption chart:** Displays the total consumption units recorded for each month. It helps you compare monthly consumption over the displayed period and review the projected consumption for the upcoming month.

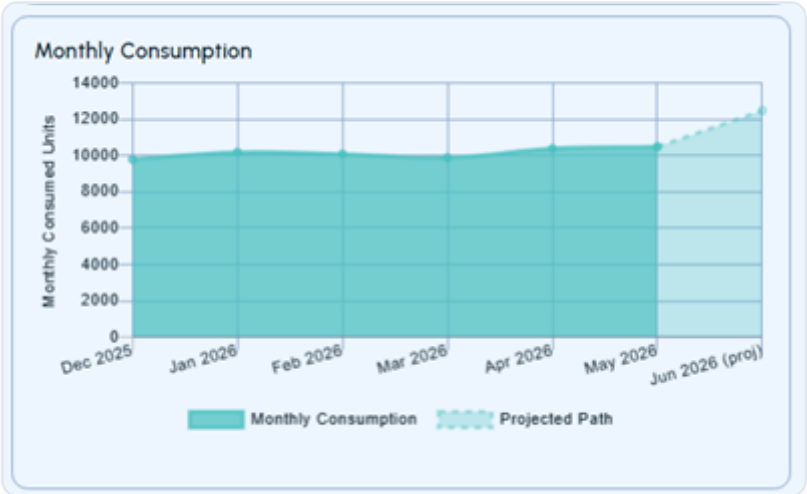


CHART ELEMENT	DESCRIPTION
Monthly Consumed Units	Represents the total number of consumption units recorded during each month.
Monthly Consumption	Displays the actual monthly consumption as a solid shaded area.
Projected Path	Displays the projected consumption for a future month as a dotted shaded area.
Month	Identifies the month associated with each consumption value. A projected month is marked as projected on the horizontal axis.

Managing Configurations

This section includes the following topics:

- [About the Configuration page](#)
- [Viewing provisioned services](#)
- [Selecting options to provision and manage user accounts](#)
- [About Provisioning](#)
- [CloudLink Sync Summary](#)
- [About Managed Tags](#)
- [About Account Management](#)

About the Configuration page

The Configuration page guides administrators through the administration setup and provisioning process. The page presents:

- A list of the Arctera Unified Platform services that are available to your company.
- The status of the setup, with information about any steps that are required to complete the configuration.

Note: The displayed configuration steps reflect the account provisioning options that are selected on the User Management page.

Viewing provisioned services

The Services page displays a read-only information about the services that are provisioned for your company. To make changes to this information, contact [Arctera Services & Support](#).

The page provides information on the following aspects as shown in the sample image below.

- General configuration

Expand the row to view general configurations such as Company Name, Parent Partner, Manage Retention Settings, Import Data, Archive Encryption, Last Access Date, and so on.

- Primary Services

Expand the row to view the primary services that are either enabled or disabled for your company and number of minimum and actual users.

- Secondary Services

Expand the row to view the secondary services that are either enabled or disabled for your company and number of minimum and actual users, and the last archiving date for each product.

- Capture Secondary Services

Expand the row to view the Capture secondary services that are either enabled or disabled for your company and number of minimum and actual users, and the last archiving date for each product.

- Domains

Expand the list to view the configured domains. If the list is extensive, use the search option to locate a specific domain instead of scrolling. You can also add new domains directly without contacting the support team. In addition, you can export the list of domains for further use. See [Managing Domains](#).

Note: By default, this service is disabled. To enable it, contact your system administrator or the Arctera Support team. To add and update domains, the tenant must possess the Administrator role and must have the Archive Settings privilege.

- Mail Continuity service

Expand the row to view the Mail Continuity services that are enabled for IP address and the domains, and the corresponding mail servers.

- Journal Addresses

Expand to view the configured Journal Addresses.

Managing Domains

Prerequisites:

- To add and update domains, the tenant must possess the *Administrator* role and must have the *Archive Settings* privilege.

- By default, this service is disabled. To enable it, contact your system administrator or the Arctera Support team.

Upon expanding the Domains section, you can:

- view the list of already configured domains.
- search for specific domains when the list is extensive.
- add new domains on your own.
- edit the existing domains
- export the list of domains for further use.

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Services**

2. **To view domains list**

Expand the **Domains** section. The list displays details such as the domain name, indicator, hosting provider, notes, and option to edit the details.

3. **To search a required domain**

In the **Search** box, type all or part of the domain name to quickly locate a specific entry. If the list is extensive, either choose the number of records you want the application to display per page or use navigation arrows at the bottom of the section for easy access to the first, previous, next, and last pages.

4. **To add new domain**

Click **+\ Add New** in the upper-right corner of the section. Enter the required *domain name* , *Indicator* , *Hosting Provider* , and *notes* if needed in the fields provided. click **Save** in the same row to add the new domain to the list.

A newly added domain first appears at the top of the list and is then placed in alphabetical order.

5. **To edit a domain**

Click **Edit** in the same row to make the fields editable. You cannot modify the domain name. However, you can update the *Indicator* , *Hosting Provider* , and *Notes* fields as needed in the fields provided. click **Save**.

6. **To export a list of domains,**

Click **Export** in the upper-right corner of the section to export the domain list in the CSV format for further use.

Selecting options to provision and manage user accounts

To select options to provision and manage user accounts:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>User Management**
2. On the **User Management** page, select one of the following provisioning options:

You can provision and manage users in the following ways:

- Manually by using Arctera Management Console

Use this option if you need to provision a small number of user accounts or prefer to manually create archive accounts in the Arctera Management Console for each new user.

- Manually and remotely by using the following tools:
- **On-premise CloudLink**

Use this option to provision user accounts from *Microsoft Active Directory* and *IBM Lotus Domino Directory*.

- **Microsoft Office 365**

Use this option to provision and manage user accounts from *Microsoft Office 365*.

See [About Exchange Online Archiving](#).

- **Google Workspace**

Use this option to provision user accounts from *Google Workspace*.

See [About Google Provisioning Archiving](#).

- **System for Cross-domain Identity Management (SCIM)**

Use this option to provision and manage user accounts from across multiple applications and services.

See [About SCIM Archiving](#).

Remote provisioning eliminates the need to manually create archive accounts in the Arctera Management Console for each new user. When configured, it automatically synchronizes new users, and their archive accounts appear in the Arctera Management Console. You can use one or more tools simultaneously.

Note: If users exist in only one environment, the user accounts synchronized through remote provisioning tools remain independent. Their archives cannot be overwritten or removed, even if they do not exist in another group. If users exist in a hybrid environment, you must select one or more remote provisioning tools. Otherwise, migrated users may not be provisioned correctly.

3. Click **Save**
4. Click **Go To Next Step** Arctera Management Console navigates you to the **My Configuration** page and guides you to perform the required configuration steps for the provisioning options you have selected.

About Provisioning

If you chose to manage account provisioning with the console application, you must configure the settings on the Provisioning page, under Configuration.

Note: If you chose to manage account provisioning remotely with CloudLink, Microsoft Office 365, Google Workspace, or System for Cross-domain Identity Management (SCIM), then you must use corresponding applications to configure the provisioning settings. Refer to the respective documentation for more information.

Complete the required options, as follows:

Table: Provisioning steps for account management with the console application

PROVISIONING STEP	REFERENCE FOR MORE INFORMATION
Configure the Arctera Personal Archive deployment options	See Configuring the Arctera Personal Archive deployment options
Configure the administrator notification options	See Configuring the administrator notification options

Configuring the Arctera Personal Archive deployment options

If you chose on the User Management page to manage account provisioning with the console application, you can specify the Arctera Personal Archive deployment options on the Provisioning page.

To configure the Arctera Personal Archive deployment provisioning options:

1. In the left navigation pane of Arctera Management Console, select **Configuration>Provisioning**
2. Expand **Personal Archive Deployment Options** , near the bottom of the page.
3. Under **Personal Archive Access** , configure whether Arctera Unified Platform automatically enables access to Arctera Personal Archive and sends a welcome message email to each user.

Note: The options you see depend on whether single sign-on authentication is configured for your company in Arctera Unified Platform. The different options reflect the fact that a welcome message is not essential for users with single sign-on authentication.

If single sign-on authentication is not configured for your company in Arctera Unified Platform, the options are as follows:

ENABLE PERSONAL ARCHIVE ACCESS AND SEND WELCOME MESSAGE	SELECT THIS OPTION TO ENABLE ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE ACCESS TO EACH ACCOUNT THAT IS PROVISIONED, AND TO ENABLE WELCOME MESSAGES TO BE SENT TO THE PROVISIONED USERS.
	BY DEFAULT THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED.
	IF YOU SELECT THIS OPTION YOU MUST SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING SUB- OPTIONS:
- Don't send Welcome Message if already sent	Select this option to send a welcome message to a provisioned user only once. This is the default option.
- Send Welcome Message anyway	Select this option to send a welcome message every time that Exchange Online

ENABLE PERSONAL ARCHIVE ACCESS AND SEND WELCOME MESSAGE	SELECT THIS OPTION TO ENABLE ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE ACCESS TO EACH ACCOUNT THAT IS PROVISIONED, AND TO ENABLE WELCOME MESSAGES TO BE SENT TO THE PROVISIONED USERS.
	BY DEFAULT THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED.
	IF YOU SELECT THIS OPTION YOU MUST SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING SUB- OPTIONS:
	Sync synchronizes the account, even if a welcome message was sent previously.

If single sign-on authentication is configured for your company in Arctera Unified Platform, the options are as follows:

ENABLE PERSONAL ARCHIVE ACCESS	SELECT THIS OPTION TO ENABLE ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE ACCESS TO EACH ACCOUNT THAT IS PROVISIONED.
	BY DEFAULT THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED.
	IF YOU SELECT THIS OPTION YOU CAN CHOOSE WHETHER ARCTERA UNIFIED PLATFORM SENDS WELCOME MESSAGES TO PROVISIONED USERS:
- Send Welcome Message	Select this option to enable welcome messages to be sent to the provisioned users.
	By default this option is not selected for new configurations.
	If you select this option you must select one of the following sub-options:

ENABLE PERSONAL ARCHIVE ACCESS	SELECT THIS OPTION TO ENABLE ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE ACCESS TO EACH ACCOUNT THAT IS PROVISIONED.
	BY DEFAULT THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED.
	IF YOU SELECT THIS OPTION YOU CAN CHOOSE WHETHER ARCTERA UNIFIED PLATFORM SENDS WELCOME MESSAGES TO PROVISIONED USERS:
- Don't send Welcome Message if already sent	Select this option to send a welcome message to a provisioned user only once. This is the default option.
- Send Welcome Message anyway	Select this option to send a welcome message every time that Exchange Online Sync synchronizes an account, even if a welcome message was sent previously.

4. Under **Welcome Message Template** , complete the details of the templates for the following messages:

- The welcome message that can be sent to provisioned users.
- The notification message that is sent to the chosen administrator roles when Arctera Unified Platform provisions new archive accounts.

SELECT TEMPLATE	SELECT ACCOUNT TO CONFIGURE THE WELCOME MESSAGE TEMPLATE FOR PROVISIONED USERS.
	SELECT ADMINISTRATOR TO CONFIGURE THE ADMINISTRATORS' NOTIFICATION MESSAGE.
From	Enter the sender email address for the message.
Subject	Enter the information you want saved as the subject for the message email.

SELECT TEMPLATE	SELECT ACCOUNT TO CONFIGURE THE WELCOME MESSAGE TEMPLATE FOR PROVISIONED USERS.
	SELECT ADMINISTRATOR TO CONFIGURE THE ADMINISTRATORS' NOTIFICATION MESSAGE.
Body	Edit the body text for the message. You can use the following macros that Arctera Unified Platform replaces with the relevant information, based on archive information:• {username} - automatically enters the user's login user name• {password} - automatically enters the user's login password• {accountlist} - automatically enters a list of newly created email accounts, for use with the Administrator template only

5. Click **Save**

Configuring the administrator notification options

If you chose on the User Management page to manage account provisioning with the console application, you can specify the administrator notification options on the Provisioning page.

To configure the administrator notification options:

1. In the left navigation pane of Arctera Management Console, Select **Configuration>Provisioning**
2. Expand **Notification Options** , near the bottom of the page.
3. Under **Administration Roles to Notify** , select the Arctera Unified Platform administration roles that you want to receive the administrators' notification message when Arctera Unified Platform creates archive accounts.

Note: To see a list of administrators that are assigned to a role, click that role.

4. Click **Save**

CloudLink Sync Summary

The CloudLink Sync Summary appears in the Configuration menu of the Arctera Management Console.

If you want to receive a warning email when a successful CloudLink Sync has not occurred in the past month, you can enable notifications.

- To enable notifications, select the enable button, enter email addresses in the text box and click Add.
- To disable notifications, select the disable button.

About Managed Tags

From the Managed Tags page, you can create global tags that you can assign to users. Once you create a managed tag and associate a retention policy, users can apply the tag to archived messages to extend their retention period. The retention period of the retention policy determines how long tagged messages are retained in Arctera Unified Platform.

Table: Tasks with managed tags lists the tasks that you can perform that are related to managed tags:

Table: Tasks with managed tags

TASK	REFERENCE
Create new managed tags.	See Creating a managed tag
Assign managed tags to users.	See Editing managed tags
Change the retention policy that is associated with a managed tag.	See Changing the retention policy associated with a managed tag
Edit and delete managed tags.	See Deleting a managed tag

Creating a managed tag

You can create a managed tag and assign an existing retention policy to it, if required.

To create a managed tag:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Managed Tags**

2. In the top-right corner of the page, click **Create New**
3. Under **Create Managed Tag** , do the following:

- In the **Tag Name** field, enter a new tag name.
- In the **Policy Name** field, select a policy.

Note: You must create a retention policy before you can associate it with a managed tag. See [Creating a retention policy](#).

4. Click **Assign Policy** to associate a retention policy with the managed tag.

The **Retention Policies** dialog box appears.

Note: To clear the **Policy Name** field, click **Remove Policy**.

5. In the **Retention Period (days)** field, check the duration of the assigned policy.
6. If required, in the **Description** field, enter a description for the tag.
7. From the **Target Type** drop-down, specify one of the following targeted users.

The currently available options:

- All
- Distribution Lists
- Tags
- Active Directory Groups

This option allows customers who sync Azure Active Directory groups using **Active Directory Group synchronization** or **SCIM Group Sync** to use group membership information for retention.

It is recommended to associate all users assigned Managed Tags when a policy is set to target Active Directory Groups. Managed Tags are applied to items based on group membership at the time the items are received when managed tags are associated to the policy. When the Managed Tags are not associated, the group membership is evaluated only at the time of item expiry.

Note: Administrators, reviewers, and users cannot view emails linked to this tag or remove the tag from emails unless they are explicitly granted permissions. To allow permission, SeeEditing managed tags.

8. If required, under **Set Managed Tag Permissions**, configure the settings for **Tagged Email Visibility** and **Remove Tags from Emails** sections.

- Selecting the **Tagged Email Visibility** options allow administrators, reviewers, and users to view messages of other users that have the managed tag applied.
- Selecting the **Remove Tags from Emails** options allow administrators, reviewers, and users to remove the managed tag from messages belonging to other users.

9. Click **Save**

Editing managed tags

When creating a managed tag, you cannot assign users or set permissions to allow them to view emails linked to managed tag or remove the tag from emails. Administrators, reviewers, and users cannot view emails linked to this tag or remove the tag from emails unless they are explicitly granted permissions. Therefore, you need to edit the tag to specify users and set permissions for them.

Note: If no permissions are set, only you (the creator of the managed tag) can view emails linked to it or remove the tag from emails.

Besides this, you can also modify the tag name, assign or remove policies to the tag.

To edit a managed tag:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Managed Tags**
2. On the **Managed Tags** page, click on the tag to edit its details.

Managed Tags + Create New

Policy Association: All Tag Name, Policy Name, Descriptio

Tag Name ↑	Policy Name (days)	Retention Period	Description
Retain (10 Years)	10 Years Retention Policy	3650	
Retain (7 Years)	7 Years Retention Policy	2555	
Retain (8 Years)	8 Years Retention Policy	2920	
Sample			asodd

Items per page: 10 1 - 4 of 4 K < > X

Tag details appear as shown in the sample image below.

Managed Tags / Edit Managed Tag

Edit Managed Tag

Tag Name *

Retain (8 Years)

Policy Name

8 Years Retention Policy

Remove Policy Assign Policy

Retention Period (days)

2920

Description

Set Managed Tag Permissions

Tagged Email Visibility

☐ Allow any administrator with permission to use this tag to view all emails associated with this tag

☐ Allow any reviewer with permission to use this tag to view all emails associated with this tag

☐ Allow any user with permission to use this tag to view all emails associated with this tag

Remove Tag from Emails

☐ Allow any administrator with permission to use this tag to remove the tag from emails

☐ Allow any reviewer with permission to use this tag to remove the tag from emails

☐ Allow any user with permission to use this tag to remove the tag from emails

Users Assigned

☐ All Users ☒ Selected Users

Add Users Remove Checked

Search...

☐ Email Address	Last Name	First Name
--	-----------	------------

Items per page: 10 0 of 0 K < > X

Cancel Save

- In the **Tag Name** field, modify the tag name if needed.
- In the **Policy Name** field, if the policy is already assigned, the policy name is displayed. One tag can have only one policy assigned. You cannot assign multiple policies to one tag.
 - To change the existing policy, click **Assign Policy**. See [Associating a retention policy with a policy target](#).
 - To remove the already assigned policy, click **Remove Policy**.

The retention period and description defined in the policy associated with the tag is displayed.

- Under **Users Assigned** section, select **Selected Users** to specify tag users.

Users Assigned

☐ All Users ☒ Selected Users

Add Users Remove Checked

Search...

☐ Email Address	Last Name	First Name
--	-----------	------------

Items per page: 10 0 of 0 K < > X

Cancel Save

- To add new users, click **Add Users**, and select the required users from the list.

- To remove users who are already added, select the users and click **Remove Checked**.

Note: Removing a user prevents them from viewing messages assigned to that tag. The application displays a confirmation prompt. click ****OK ****to confirm or **Cancel** to stop the removal.

6. Set managed tag permissions as needed.

- Under **Tagged Email Visibility** , select who can view emails linked to this managed tag. Select one or more options mentioned below.
 - Select to allow all administrators with permission to use this tag.
 - Select to allow all reviewers with permission to use this tag.
 - Select to allow all users with permission to use this tag.
- Under **Remove Tag from Emails** , select who can remove this tag from emails. Select one or more options mentioned below.
 - Select to allow all administrators with permission to use this tag.
 - Select to allow all reviewers with permission to use this tag.
 - Select to allow all users with permission to use this tag.

7. Click **Save**

Changing the retention policy associated with a managed tag

If required, you can change the retention policy that is associated with a managed tag.

To change the retention policy associated with a managed tag:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Managed Tags**
2. On the **Managed Tags** page, search for and select an existing managed tag.
3. Under **Create Managed Tag** section, click **Remove Policy**
4. In the **Policy Name** field, select the required policy, and click **Assign Policy**
5. Click **Save**

Deleting a managed tag

If required, you can delete any managed tags that are no long needed.

Note: You cannot delete a managed tag if it is associated with a retention policy.

To delete a managed tag:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Managed Tags**
2. On the **Managed Tags** page, search for and select the tag you want to delete.

The application displays the policy details of the tag.
3. Click **Remove Policy** to disassociate the retention policy from the managed tag.
4. Click **Save**

About Account Management

From the Account Management page, you can manage archive accounts for Arctera Unified Platform.

[Table: Account management tasks](#) lists the tasks that you can perform from the Account Management page, and where to find more information.

Table: Account management tasks

TASK	REFERENCE
Search for archive accounts	See Searching for archive accounts
Filter the listed archive accounts	See Using search filters
Create new archive accounts	See Creating an archive account
View the details of an archive account	See Viewing and editing the archive account details
	See About the Account Details page
Edit an archive account	See Editing an archive account
Delete an archive account	See Deleting an archive account
Deploy users	See Deploying users

TASK	REFERENCE
Remove user access	See Removing user access
Enable services for existing archive accounts	See Enabling services for existing archive accounts
Edit Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permissions for existing archive accounts	See Editing Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission for existing archive accounts
Export archive account information	See Exporting archive account information
Unlock archive accounts	See Unlocking an archive account

Searching for archive accounts

The Account Management page lists the archive accounts for your organization. If you have a large number of archive accounts, the accounts are displayed on multiple pages. You can scroll through the pages using the controls at the bottom of the main pane.

A Quick Search and an Advanced Search are available to let you search for specific archive accounts. Advanced Search lets you search according to the role that is assigned to the account, or according to other Arctera Unified Platform access options.

To use Quick Search:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. In the **Search** field, enter the user name or email address that is associated with the archive account.
3. Click the **Search** icon.

To use Advanced Search:

4. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

5. Specify your search criteria in the following fields:

EMAIL ADDRESS OR ALIAS	ENTER AN EMAIL ADDRESS OR ASSOCIATED ALIAS EMAIL ADDRESS FOR THE USER.
Last Name	Enter the last name of a user.
First Name	Enter the first name of a user.
Notes	type some text from the note.
RepID	Specify the RepID.
Domain Name	Specify the domain name.
Department	Specify the mane of department.
Role	Select the type of role that is assigned to the user.
Account Status	Select a status.
Personal Archive Access	Select if the user has access to Arctera Personal Archive enabled.
Discovery Archive Access	Select if the user has access to Arctera eDiscovery enabled.
Advanced Supervision Access	Select if the user has access to Advanced Supervision enabled.
Welcome Message Sent	Select if the user has received a welcome message.
Account Status	Select if the account status for the user is active or deleted.
Archive	Select if the archive for the user is currently active.
Arctera Unified Platform Mobile	Select if the user has access to Personal Archive Mobile Web Access.
Account Locked	Select if the user has been locked out of their archive account.

EMAIL ADDRESS OR ALIAS	ENTER AN EMAIL ADDRESS OR ASSOCIATED ALIAS EMAIL ADDRESS FOR THE USER.
Office 365 PA Collection	Select if the user Office 365 Personal Archive collection enabled.
	Note: This feature is no longer supported in Arctera Unified Platform.

6. Click **Apply**

The application displays only those archive accounts that match with the advanced filter criteria you set.

Using search filters

In addition to using Quick Search or Advanced Search, you can use search filters to find archive accounts. You can use one of the predefined custom filters, or filter by distribution lists.

To use search filters:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. Click **Custom Filters**, **Distribution Lists**, or **Dynamic Distribution Lists**
3. Select a filter from the chosen group.
4. Click the **Apply** icon.

The application displays only those archive accounts that match the selected search filter criteria.

5. To remove the search filter, click the **Clear** icon.

Creating an archive account

To create an archive account:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**
2. Click **Archives>New Archive**
3. On the **Accounts** page, under **Archive Detail** , provide the following details:

EMAIL ADDRESS	ENTER THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS FOR THE USER.
	NOTE: IF YOUR ORGANIZATION HAS MORE THAN ONE DOMAIN, SELECT THE CORRECT DOMAIN FROM THE DROP-DOWN LIST.
First Name	Enter the first name of the user.
Last Name	Enter the last name of the user.
User Name	The user name for the account. By default Arctera Management Console uses the email address as the user name, but you can change it if you want.
Password	Enter a password for the user that meets the password policy requirements for your organization.
	See Configuring an advanced password policy
	Note: This option does not appear if you selected Enable Personal Archive Access and send Welcome Message under Provisioning > Personal Archive Deployment Options > Personal Archive Access. In that case, Arctera Management Console generates a password automatically to send to the user.
Confirm Password	If you entered a password you must enter the password again to confirm it.
Time Zone	Select the correct time zone for the user.
Role	Indicates the role that is currently configured for this archive account.
RepID	Provide the RepID of the email address.

EMAIL ADDRESS	ENTER THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS FOR THE USER.
	NOTE: IF YOUR ORGANIZATION HAS MORE THAN ONE DOMAIN, SELECT THE CORRECT DOMAIN FROM THE DROP-DOWN LIST.
Notes	Specify any special notes for this archive, if required.
Departments	This option is available exclusively for the customers for whom the Advanced Supervision primary service is enabled, and not for all customers. If the Advanced Supervision primary service is not enabled, the Arctera Management Console does not display this option.
	Click Edit to open the Add/Remove Departments dialog box. Search for and select one or multiple departments created in Advanced Supervision. Add or remove the monitor employees of the departments, if required. Click Update to save the selection.
	After updating from Arctera Management Console , users automatically get listed under the Monitored Employees section of the selected department in Advanced Supervision. If auditing of Monitored employees is enabled in Advanced Supervision, the above action gets audited in Advanced Supervision and the corresponding monitored employee audit record can be viewed in the Audit Viewer section of Advanced Supervision application.
	However, for this synchronization, the SQL Server and the Audit server must communicate with each other and the Auditing service should be enabled for the selected department.

EMAIL ADDRESS	ENTER THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS FOR THE USER.
	NOTE: IF YOUR ORGANIZATION HAS MORE THAN ONE DOMAIN, SELECT THE CORRECT DOMAIN FROM THE DROP-DOWN LIST.
Supervision Roles	This option is available exclusively for the customers for whom the Advanced Supervision primary service is enabled, and not for all customers. If the Advanced Supervision primary service is not enabled, the Arctera Management Console does not display this option.
	After you select this service, you can quickly access departments and users available in Advanced Supervision to manage their roles and permissions.
	Click Add to search for and select one or multiple departments. View the monitored employees of those departments, and assign roles and permissions to them. Click Update
	After updating from Arctera Management Console , user roles automatically get updated in Advanced Supervision. If auditing of Role Assignments is enabled in Advanced Supervision, the above action gets audited in Advanced Supervision and the corresponding role assignments audit record can be viewed in the Audit Viewer section of Advanced Supervision application.

4. Under **Status** , select the status options for the user:

ACCOUNT	SELECT WHETHER THE ACCOUNT IS CREATED IN AN ENABLED OR DISABLED STATE.
Login	Select whether Arctera Unified Platform account logins are unlocked or locked.
Archiving	Select whether archiving is enabled or disabled.
	If you select Enabled , the email messages for the user start journaling to Arctera Unified Platform immediately after you create the archive account.
Folder Sync	Indicates whether the Folder Sync feature is enabled or disabled.
	Note: This status is for information only. Folder Sync cannot be enabled or disabled from Arctera Management Console. Folder Sync is enabled or disabled at an account level from the Folder Sync application.
External Reviewer	Select whether the user is to be an external reviewer. External reviewers are the users that are not part of your organization, but who need to review archived messages for a Arctera eDiscovery matter. The following conditions apply to archive accounts for external reviewers: • Can only be assigned the Accounts role. • Can be assigned to any matter like users with the normal Reviewer role assigned. • Can only access the E-Discovery tab in Arctera eDiscovery. • Can only access the matters that are assigned to them. • Can apply labels, review statuses, and notes to messages if granted permission. • Cannot access a matter once the matter expires. • Cannot restore, forward, or reply to messages regardless of the configuration for your organization. • Cannot edit the labels or the review statuses that are

ACCOUNT	SELECT WHETHER THE ACCOUNT IS CREATED IN AN ENABLED OR DISABLED STATE.																		
	already assigned to a message.An external reviewer has their account disabled for archiving.																		
Bypass Surveillance	Status Account Enabled Login Unlocked Archiving Disabled Folder Sync Disabled External Reviewer No Bypass Surveillance Yes Services ☒ Personal cloud ☒ eDiscovery ☒ Surveillance ☒ Office 365 ☐ Exchange Online Folder Synchronization ☐ Data Insight Archives Enable Services Contact Details Bulk Disabl Search... <table><thead><tr><th>Email Address</th><th>Bypass Surveillance</th><th>First Name</th></tr></thead><tbody><tr><td>☐ 100820080807@qaoffice365.onmicros...</td><td>No</td><td>First</td></tr><tr><td>☐ 123312321@qaoffice365.onmicrosoft.co...</td><td>Yes</td><td>123444</td></tr><tr><td>☐ 123MyName@qaoffice365.onmicrosoft...</td><td>No</td><td>123MyName</td></tr><tr><td>☐ 150920042125@qaoffice365.onmicroso...</td><td>No</td><td>First</td></tr><tr><td>☐ 18_nov_new@qaoffice365.onmicrosoft...</td><td>No</td><td>18_nov_new</td></tr></tbody></table>	Email Address	Bypass Surveillance	First Name	☐ 100820080807@qaoffice365.onmicros...	No	First	☐ 123312321@qaoffice365.onmicrosoft.co...	Yes	123444	☐ 123MyName@qaoffice365.onmicrosoft...	No	123MyName	☐ 150920042125@qaoffice365.onmicroso...	No	First	☐ 18_nov_new@qaoffice365.onmicrosoft...	No	18_nov_new
Email Address	Bypass Surveillance	First Name																	
☐ 100820080807@qaoffice365.onmicros...	No	First																	
☐ 123312321@qaoffice365.onmicrosoft.co...	Yes	123444																	
☐ 123MyName@qaoffice365.onmicrosoft...	No	123MyName																	
☐ 150920042125@qaoffice365.onmicroso...	No	First																	
☐ 18_nov_new@qaoffice365.onmicrosoft...	No	18_nov_new																	

ACCOUNT	SELECT WHETHER THE ACCOUNT IS CREATED IN AN ENABLED OR DISABLED STATE.
	ReplID Departments Email Address Last Name First Name User Name Domain Name Archive Active Active/InActive Date PAA DAA Surveillance O365 PA Created By Exchange Exchange Online Folder Sync Disabled Aliases WLS Notes Administrative Role ReplID Departments Bypass Surveillance Apply

This

5. Under **Services** , select the services that you want to enable for the archive account:

ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE	LETS THE USER ACCESS ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE.
Arctera Personal Archive Mobile	Lets the user access Personal Archive Mobile Web Access.
	Note: For this service to be enabled, you must also enable the option for Personal Archive Mobile Web Access on the Archive Options page.
Arctera eDiscovery	Lets the user access Arctera eDiscovery.
Advanced Supervision	Lets the user be granted Advanced Supervision access and permissions.
Exchange Online	Enables Exchange Online Personal Archive collections for the user.
	Note: This feature is no longer supported in Arctera Unified Platform and should not be selected.

6. Under **Archive Aliases**, if required, enter an alias email addresses that you want to associate with the archive account. click **Add**. Repeat to add more aliases if necessary.

Note: Any messages that are sent to these alias email addresses are forwarded automatically to the primary email address. If you do not associate an alias email address with the archive account, messages that are sent to alias email address are saved in the Unassigned Legacy Account.

7. Click **Save** to save the details you entered and to create the new user.

Viewing and editing the archive account details

You can view the details of an archive account from Account Management.

To view the details of an archive account:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. Search for and select the archive account of which you want to view the details.

For quick and advance searching, See [Searching for archive accounts](#).

The application displays the details of the selected archive account.

3. If required, click **Edit** to make changes to the account details.

Be aware that if you manage account provisioning remotely with CloudLink or with Exchange Online Sync, some of the account details cannot be updated from within Arctera Management Console.

Note: If you disable an archive account the user can no longer access Arctera Personal Archive and their messages are no longer journaled to Arctera Unified Platform.

4. Click **Save**

About the Account Details page

If you view the details of an archive account, the account details page displays the following panels that provide information about the account.

- [Archive Detail](#)
- [Status](#)
- [Services](#)
- [Archive Aliases](#)
- [Delegate Access](#)
- [History](#)

Archive Detail

The Archive Detail panel provides the following details for the archive account:

EMAIL ADDRESS	THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS FOR THE USER.
First Name	The first name of the user.
Last Name	The last name of the user.

EMAIL ADDRESS	THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS FOR THE USER.
User Name	By default Arctera Management Console uses the email address as the user name.
Time Zone	The time zone that Arctera Unified Platform uses for the user.
Role	The role that is currently configured for this archive account.

Status

The Status panel shows the current state of the archive account and provides the following key details about it.

ACCOUNT	INDICATES WHETHER THE ACCOUNT IS IN AN ENABLED OR DISABLED STATE.
Login	Indicates whether Arctera Unified Platform logins for the account are unlocked or locked.
Archiving	Indicates whether archiving is enabled or disabled.
Folder Sync	Indicates whether the Folder Sync feature is enabled or disabled.

Note: If there is a redExternalflag next to the Status heading, it means that the archive account belongs to an external reviewer.

Services

The Services panel shows the Arctera Unified Platform services that are currently configured for the archive account and provides the following key details about it.

	INDICATES THAT THE SERVICE IS ENABLED FOR THE ACCOUNT.

Archive Aliases

The Archive Aliases panel lists all the archive alias email addresses for the account, and the date at which each alias was created. It also provides the following key details about it.

	INDICATES THAT THIS EMAIL ADDRESS IS THE PRIMARY ADMINISTRATOR ACCOUNT.

Delegate Access

Note: The Delegate Access panel appears only if one or more users or mail-enabled security groups have synchronized delegate permissions for the archive account.

Delegate access allows certain users or groups to access archived emails of another user in Arctera Personal Archive. These permissions are typically set by the Exchange or Exchange Online administrator and then synchronized into Arctera Personal Archive.

Panel details: This panel lists:

- Users or mail-enabled security groups with synchronized delegate access.
- The type of delegate permissions assigned.
- Icons that show whether the permission is granted or not granted.

Delegate Access (4)	
E-MAIL ADDRESS	Read and Manage (Full Access)
DiegoS@veritasai.sh.onmicrosoft.com	●
dtrump-Disabled_On_Jul 7 2023	●
4:50AM@veritasai.sh.onmicrosoft.com	
PradeepG@veritasai.sh.onmicrosoft.com	○
qa-veritasai.sh04_updated@veritasai.sh.onmicrosoft.com	○

Limitation: Permissions manually set by users within Microsoft Outlook are not synchronized.

Supported Environments: Arctera Unified Platform supports delegate access synchronization for:

- Exchange on-premises mailboxes requires CloudLink v4.0 or later.
- Exchange Online mailboxes, where permissions are controlled through the *Mailbox Delegation Permissions* settings in the Arctera Management Console.

Delegate Permissions Type: The *READ* permission has been renamed to *Read and Manage (Full Access)*.

When the administrator from the customer side accesses the Exchange on-prem or Exchange online mailbox, the same permission name appears as Full Access and Read and Manage (Full Access) respectively.

The *SEND AS* and *ON BEHALF* permissions are currently not supported and have been temporarily removed from the product interface. These permissions do not impact access to archived content at this time. The following tables list the current delegate archive access permission, and its effect in Arctera Unified Platform.

Table: Effect of delegate archive access permissions when granted to a user

DELEGATE ARCHIVE ACCESS PERMISSION	GRANTED IN THESE CIRCUMSTANCES	EFFECT OF GRANTED PERMISSION IN ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE
Read and Manage (Full Access)	The user or a group to which they belong has a synchronized Full Access delegation permission.	The user is able to read the delegated account's archived items in their Arctera Personal Archive.

Table: Effect of delegate archive access permissions when granted to a mail-enabled security group

DELEGATE ARCHIVE ACCESS PERMISSION	GRANTED IN THESE CIRCUMSTANCES	EFFECT OF GRANTED PERMISSION IN ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE
Read and Manage (Full Access)	The group has a synchronized Full Access delegation permission.	Users who belong to the group can read the delegated account's archived items in their Arctera Personal Archive.
		Note: If the user has a synchronized Deny Full Access delegation permission, the Deny permission takes precedence and the user is not given read access.

History

The History panel contains a summary of the most recent changes that were made to the archive account's settings. The panel logs any changes that relate to the details that are shown on the account details page, including any of the following:

- The creation details for the account. This information is always shown at the top of the History panel.
- Changes to the first name, last name, user name, primary email address, time zone, or role.
- Changes to the account status, such as account enabling and login enabling.
- Changes to enabled services.
- Changes to archive aliases.

Note: Changes to Folder Sync status are not recorded in the History panel.

The History panel shows a maximum of 30 changes.

To obtain more details for a particular change, you can click View logs for more details at the bottom of the history pane to explore the Arctera Unified Platform logs. The link takes you to the Logs page under Reporting in the left pane.

See [About Arctera Unified Platform reports and notifications](#).

Editing an archive account

You can edit an archive account, for example to change its status or its configured services.

To edit an archive account:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays all the available accounts.

2. In the accounts list, double-click the account to display the details of the account.
3. To edit the details, at the bottom-right of the account details page, click **Edit**
4. Update the account details as required.

Be aware that if you manage account provisioning remotely with CloudLink or with Exchange Online Sync, some of the account details cannot be updated from within Arctera Management Console.

Note: If you disable an archive account the user can no longer access Arctera Personal Archive and their messages are no longer journaled to Arctera Unified Platform.

5. Click **Save** to save your changes.
6. To go back to the archive accounts list, click the back icon displayed in the top-left corner.

Deleting an archive account

You can delete an archive account if it is no longer required. However, you cannot delete an archive account if it is part of a matter in Arctera eDiscovery.

Note: If you delete an archive account, the archived messages for the user remain in Arctera Unified Platform. These archived messages are not searchable by reviewers or administrators because the account and the associated user is not visible in both Arctera Management Console and Discovery Archive. Any new email messages that are sent to the user are archived in the Unassigned Legacy account.

To delete an archive account:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. Search for and select the archive account of which you want to delete.

For quick and advance searching, See [Searching for archive accounts](#).

3. Click **Edit**
4. To delete the selected archive account, click **Delete Archive**

The application prompts you to confirm that you want to perform the operation.

5. Click **Yes**

Deploying users

Once you have created new archive accounts you can give the users access to Arctera Personal Archive and Arctera eDiscovery from Account Management. You can also deploy Arctera Personal Archive web folders and send welcome messages to users.

To deploy users:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. Search for and select the archive account for which you want to deploy users.

For quick and advance searching, See [Searching for archive accounts](#).

3. From the accounts list, select the check box for each archive account that you want to deploy.
4. On the action bar, click **Archives** and then click **Deploy User**
5. In the **Deploy Users** window, select one or more of the following deployment tasks:

- **Enable DA Access** — provides access to Arctera eDiscovery.
- **Enable VAS Access** — provides access to Advanced Supervision.
- **Enable PA Access** — provides access to Arctera Personal Archive.
- **Deploy PA Web Folder** — creates a Microsoft Outlook web folder for accessing Arctera Personal Archive.
- **Send Welcome Message** — sends a welcome message with login credentials.

6. Click **OK**

Enabling services for existing archive accounts

In addition to enabling services when creating new archive accounts, you can enable services for one or more existing archive accounts from the Account Management page.

To enable services for existing archive accounts:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. Search for and select the archive accounts whose services you want to enable.

For quick and advance searching, See [Searching for archive accounts](#).

3. On the action bar, click **Enable Services**
4. In the **Enable Services** window, select one or more of the following option:

- **Office 365 PA Collection** — Enables Exchange Online Personal Archive collections.
- **Exchange Online folder Sync** — Enables Exchange Online folder synchronization.

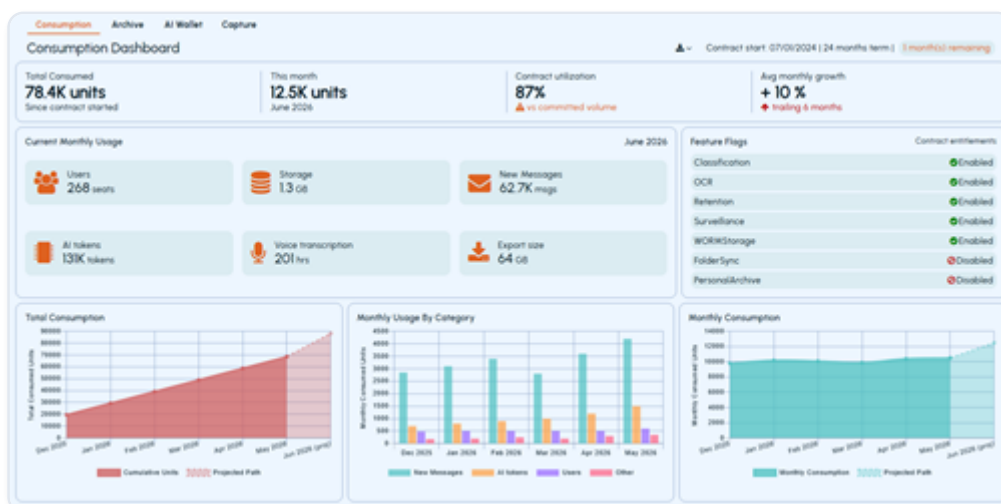
- Click **OK** If the services are enabled successfully, the application displays the success message.
- On the account details page, ensure that the selected services are enabled.

Note: The accounts that are not created by using Office 365 or Exchange online does not get enabled for Exchange Online Folder Synchronization. In case you receive such notification, clickClose. The application displays the notification for successful enabling of services. In case you receive such notification, clickClose.

Configuring the Manage Your Own Keys (MYOK) Feature

Feature overview

This is for testing purposes.



- test 1

This is end of testing.

The Manage Your Own Keys (MYOK) feature allows customers to encrypt their data using their own Azure-managed encryption keys, instead of Azure-managed encryption keys controlled by Management Console.

If a customer opts to manage its own encryption keys, the Management Console Super Admin enables the MYOK option from the Management Console during the initial provisioning of the customer's account. After MYOK is enabled, the customer gains full control over its Azure-managed keys through the Management Console and uses them to encrypt and protect its data.

MYOK-specific constraints

The MYOK option is available only during initial provisioning of a customer account from the Management Console. If the customer opts to manage its own encryption keys, the Management Console Super Admin must enable MYOK at that stage.

The customer for whom the MYOK feature is not enabled can contact Arctera support to access this option; however, the process incurs additional time and cost. Once enabled, a service alert prompts customer administrators to complete the MYOK configuration. Until it's completed, the Management Console remains restricted, and other features are inaccessible.

Prerequisites

Before installing the Microsoft Azure app, ensure that:

- You have the Application Administrator and Owner (subscription owner) roles to create the encryption keys.
- You must sign up using an Azure Active Directory (Azure AD) organizational account.

Note: Personal Microsoft accounts are not supported for this configuration.

Configuration steps

The stages involved in the MYOK feature configuration are described below.

- To be done by the Management Console Super Administrator
 - Stage 1: [Enabling a customer for the MYOK feature](#)
- To be done by the Customer's Management Console administrator
 - Stage 2: [Installing the Azure App and assigning it the Admin role](#)
 - Stage 3: [Generating a Storage Key URI](#)
 - Stage 4: [Acknowledging a successful configuration](#)
 - Stage 5: [Configuring key rotation policy](#)

Enabling a customer for the MYOK feature

During the provisioning of a new customer, the Management Console Super Administrator can access the MYOK option on the Company Details page. After the customer has been created, this option becomes unavailable.

Note: The customer account administrator is not involved in this procedure. It is performed entirely by the Management Console Super Administrator. The customer administrator receives a service alert on the Management Console interface upon logging in.

To enable a customer for the MYOK feature:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Customer Service>Customers**
 - To enable MYOK while adding a new customer, click **Add Customer**.
 - To enable MYOK for an existing customer, search for and select the customer, then click **Edit**.

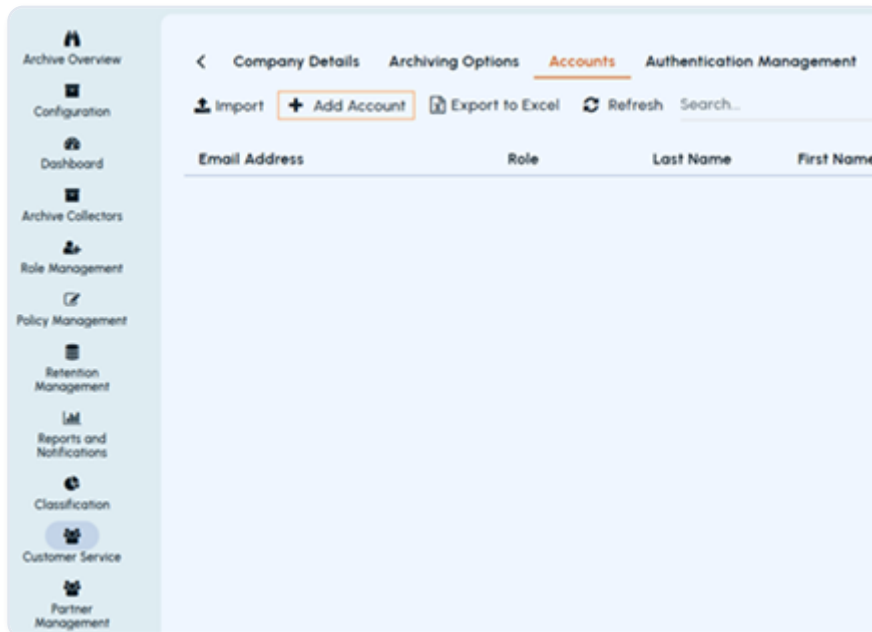
The **Company Details** page appears.

2. Specify the required customer details.
3. Select the **Manage Your Own Encryption Keys** check box.
4. Click **Save**

Note: After saving the customer account, the application sends a service alert to the customer. The Management Console Super Administrator must then assign the Admin role to the customer account user. Only after receiving the Admin role can the customer user independently perform the required next steps.

5. To assign the Admin role to the customer account, select **Customer Service>Customers**. The saved company details are displayed.

6. Navigate to the **Accounts** tab and click on **Add Account**



7. Specify the required details, select the **Admin** check box.

8. Click **Save**

Installing the Azure App and assigning it the Admin role

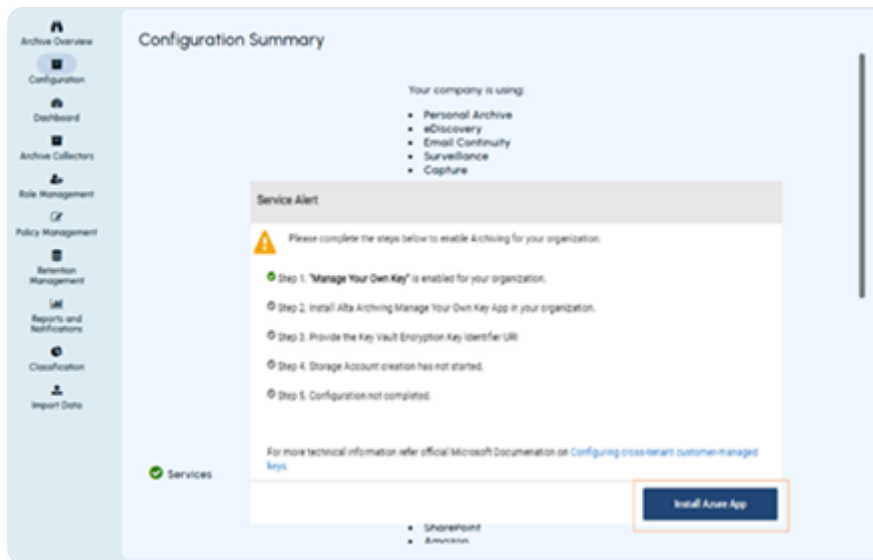
After the Arctera Management Console super administrator enables the MYOK feature for the customer account, the customer account administrator receives a service alert upon logging in. The alert prompts the administrator to complete the MYOK configuration.

Note: Until the setup is complete, the Management Console remains restricted, and other features remain inaccessible.

Prerequisites: Ensure that you are the subscription owner of the Azure Subscription where the encryption key will be created.

To install the Azure App and assign a role to it:

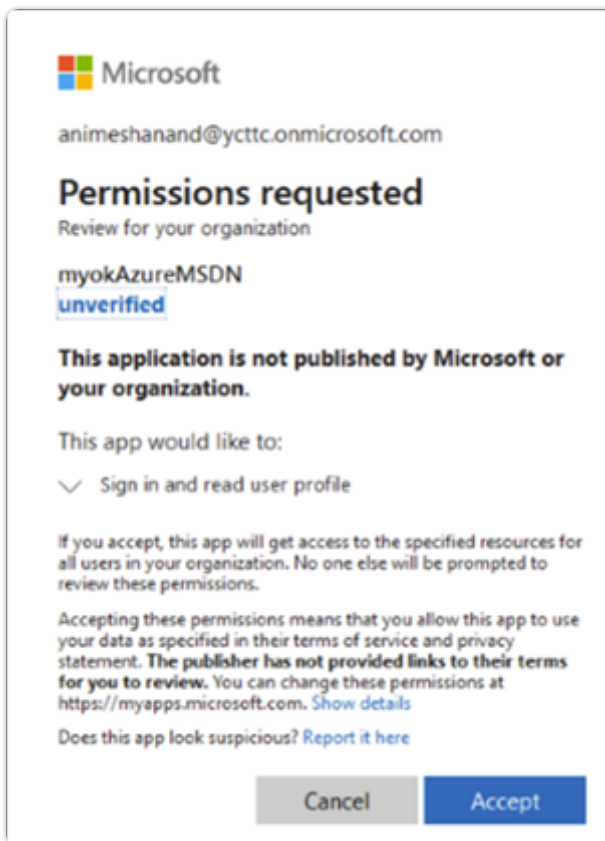
1. Log in to the Management Console with the administrator credentials.
2. Ensure that the **Service Alert** notification is received and displayed immediately after login.



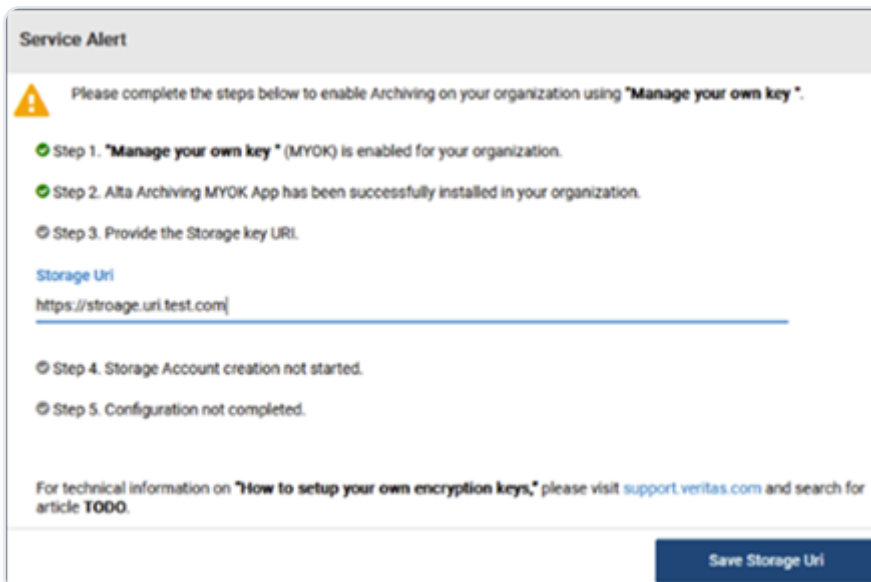
3. On the service alert window, click **Install Azure App**

The application redirects you to the Azure Sign-in page.

4. Enter your email and password and click **Sign in**. If permission to install is denied, click **Retry Install Azure App**.



5. Click **Accept** to allow the requested permissions to initiate the installation. This app gets installed on the customer's Azure subscription. The application redirects you to the **Service Alert** window.
6. On the service alert window, specify the **Storage Key URI**



Note: To obtain the Storage Key URI, access the Microsoft Azure portal and sign in using the same user credentials that were used to install the Azure app. See [Generating a Storage Key URI](#).

7. Click **Save Storage URI**

Generating a Storage Key URI

This section briefly navigates you to create a key vault. For detailed information, refer to [Create a key vault using the Azure portal](#).

To generate the Storage key URI:

1. On the Microsoft Azure portal, select **Home>Create a resource>Key Vault**
2. On the **Key Vaults** page, in the left navigation pane, under **Objects**, select **Keys**, and click **Create**

Note: The Azure Key Vault must be created with **Purge Protection** enabled.

The screenshot shows the 'Create a key vault' page in the Microsoft Azure portal. The breadcrumb navigation at the top indicates the path: Home > Key vaults > Create a key vault. The page has tabs for Basics, Access configuration, Networking, Tags, and Review + create. The Basics tab is active. Below the tabs, there is a description of Azure Key Vault. The 'Project details' section asks for a subscription and resource group. The 'Instance details' section includes fields for Key vault name, Region, and Pricing tier. The 'Recovery options' section has a 'Purge protection' toggle set to 'Enabled'. At the bottom, there are buttons for Previous, Next, and Review + create.

3. Specify the mandatory field details, and click **Next**
4. Click **Review + Create** to create a Key Vault.
5. Select this Key Vault and click **Keys**

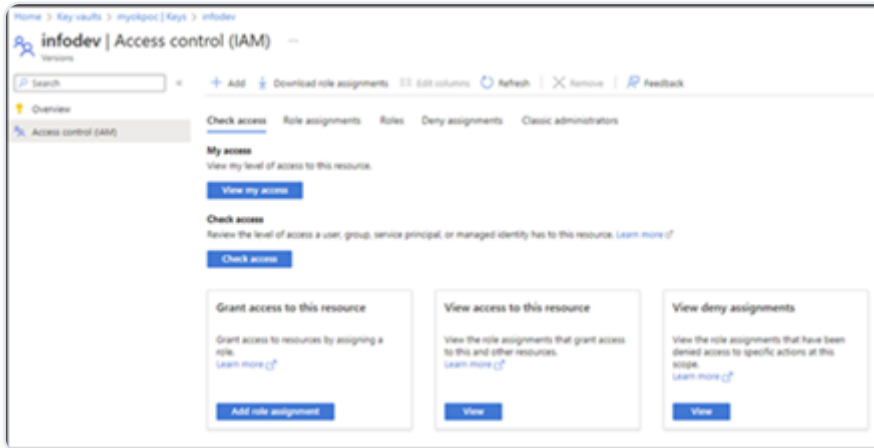
6. Click **Generate/Import** to create a key.
7. On the **Create a key** page, specify the field details, and click **Create**

Note: When creating a key, do not select the Set activation date and Set expiration date check boxes. These fields must remain blank.

The key is created and listed as shown in the sample image below.

Name	Status
anonforalmoyck1	✓ Enabled
anonmdrkeypoc	✓ Enabled
d50deca0-3c19-489b-b0dc-fa7b4307e4a2	✓ Enabled
infodev	✓ Enabled
mayuri	✓ Enabled
newkey	✓ Enabled

8. Select the key and click **Access Control (IAM)**

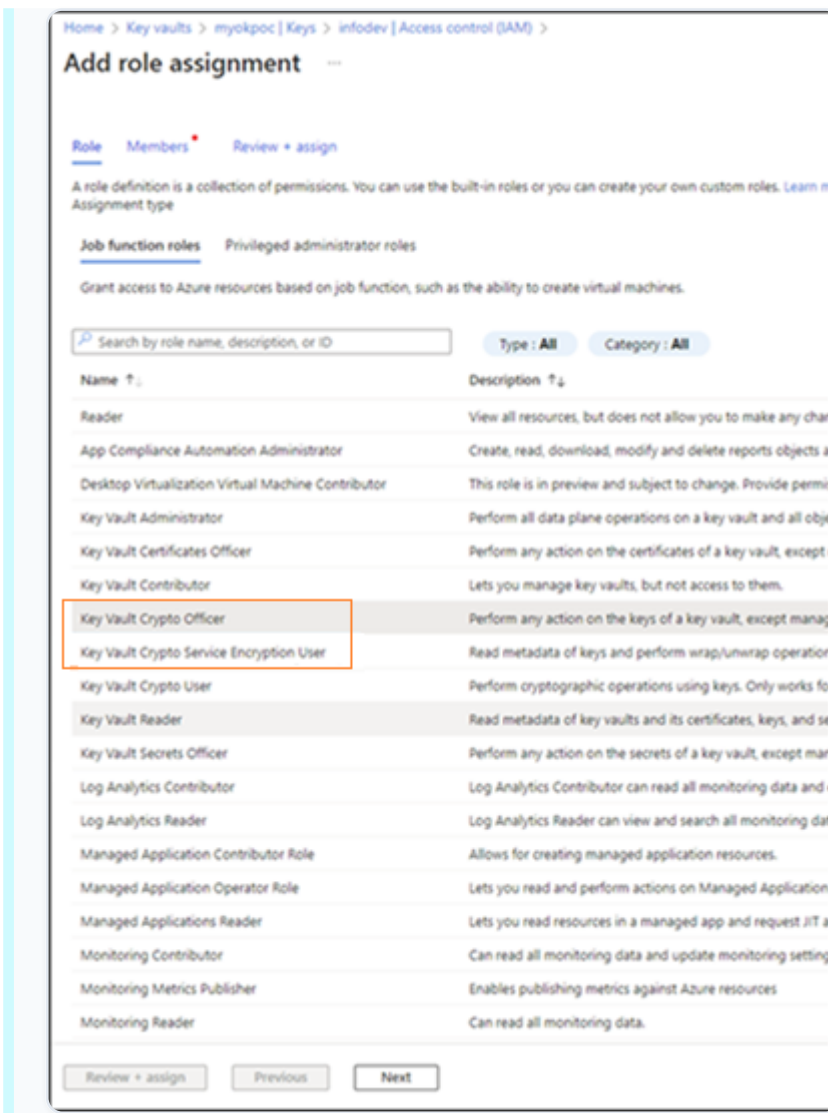


9. Click **Add role assignment**. On the **Add role assignment** page, select the **Role** tab, then select any of the following roles:

- *Key Vault Crypto Service Encryption User*
- *Key Vault Crypto Officer*

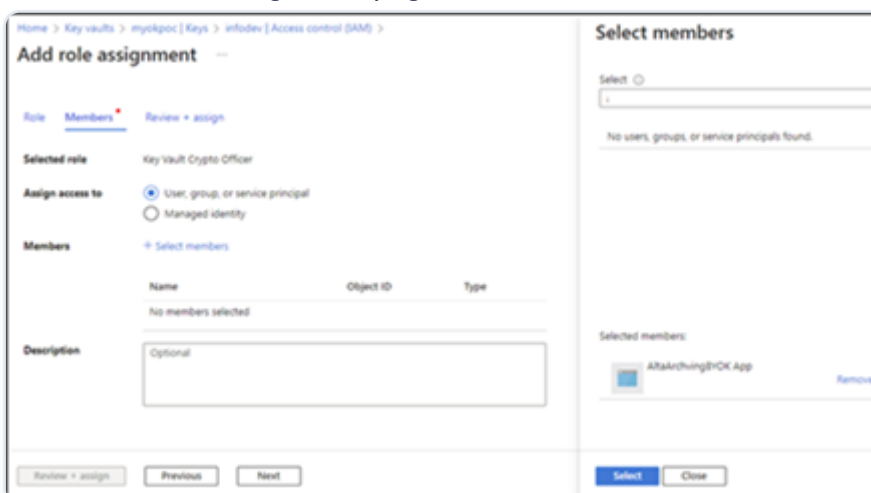
Note:

- To assign permissions to the application, a user can have either the *Key Vault Crypto Officer* role or the *Key Vault Crypto Service Encryption User* role.
- However, to create an encryption key, the user must have the *Key Vault Crypto Officer* role or a higher-level role with access to Key Vault and permission to create keys.



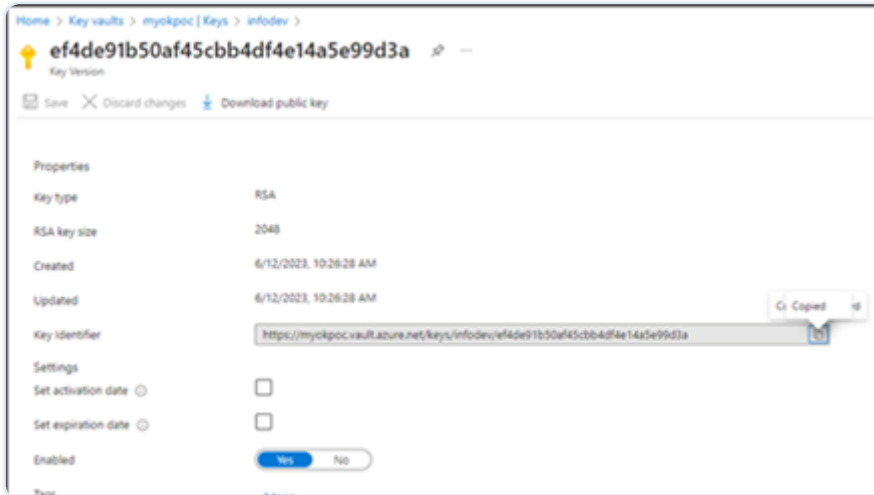
10. Click **Next** to access the **Members** tab.

11. On the Add role assignment page, select the **Members** tab, and click **+ Select members**



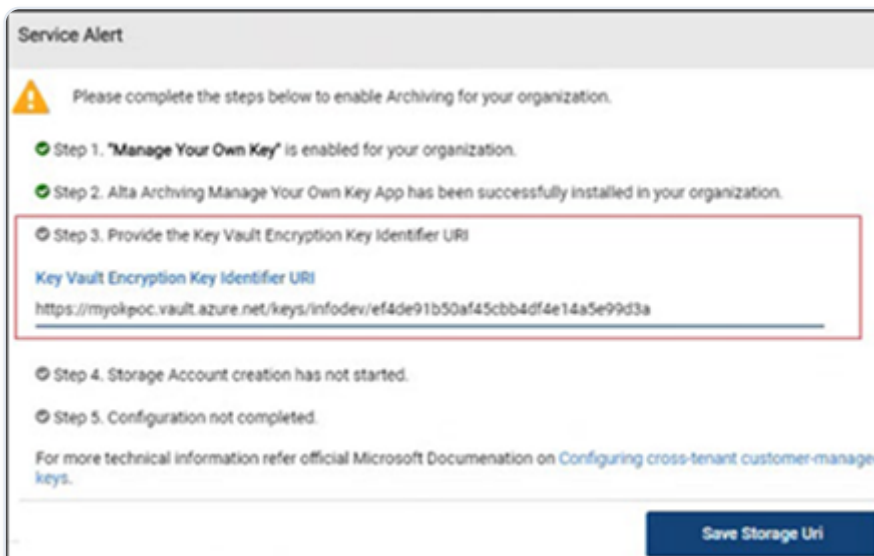
12. Select the Azure app that you have created and installed. See [Installing the Azure App and assigning it the Admin role](#).

13. Click **Next and Save**

14. Select the key and click **Overview**15. Copy the key Identifier value and go to the **Service Alert** window of the Management Console.**Acknowledging a successful configuration**

To acknowledge a successful configuration:

1. On the **Service Alert** window, paste the key identifier, which you have copied as explained in the previous task, into the **Storage URI** field.



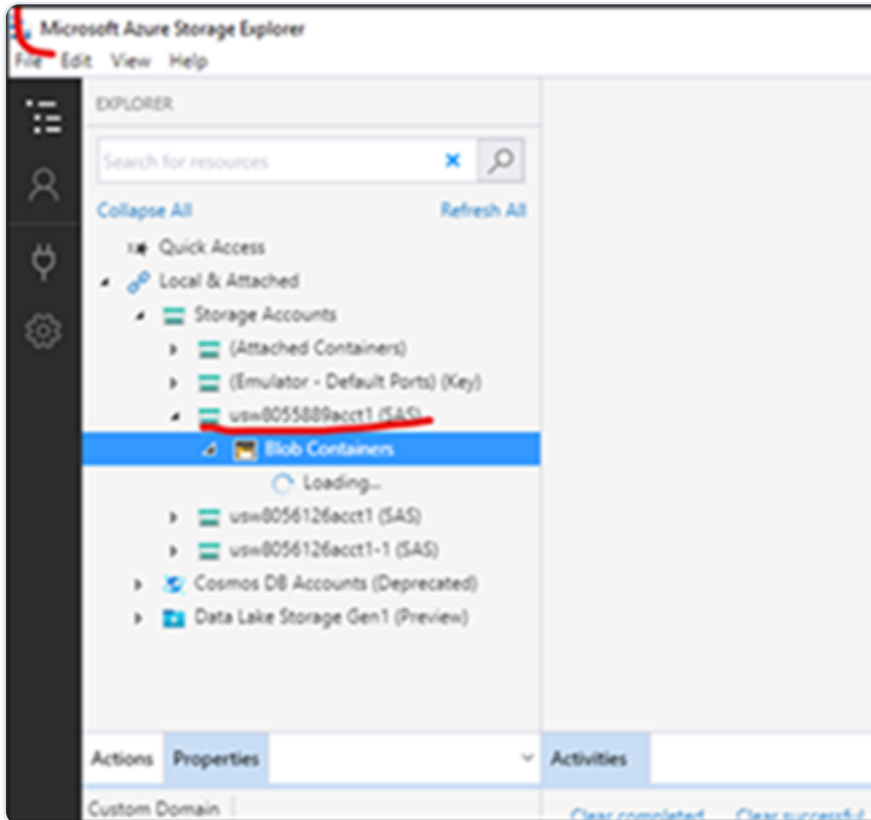
2. Click **Save Storage Uri**

The application saves the Key Vault Encryption Key Identifier.

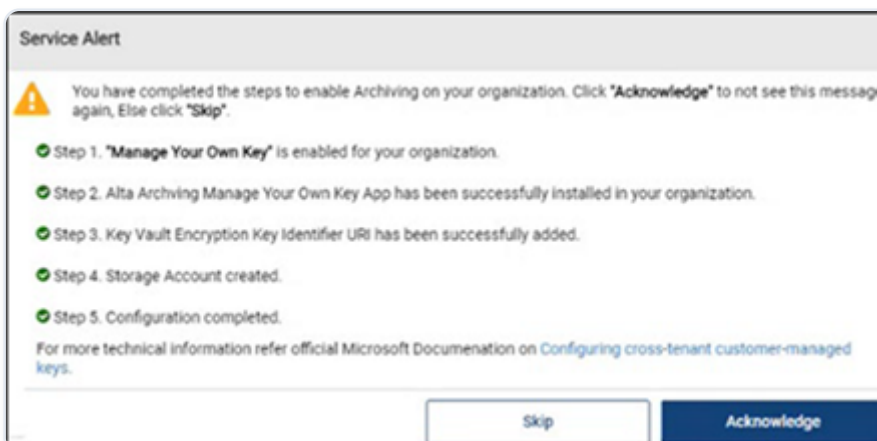
3. Ensure that the **Storage Account** is created on the Azure portal.

After the *Key Vault Encryption Key Identifier* is successfully added, the system automatically creates a corresponding storage account.

- To locate the storage account on the Azure portal, go to **Storage Accounts** and search using the following format: \< environment \> \< groupID \> . For example, *usw8054120acct*.
- To access the data downloaded from the storage account, go to **Microsoft Azure Storage Explorer**.



4. Ensure that the **Service Alert** window displays all the steps marked as completed.



Note: The application proceeds with the remaining steps mentioned on the Service Alert window only if the providedStorage Key URI is valid.

5. Click **Acknowledge** to confirm successful provisioning and prevent further display of this service alert. If you are not sure, click **Skip**
6. To confirm if the MYOK feature is enabled for you, on the Management Console, select **Policy Management>Archive Options**
7. Ensure that the *status* under the **Manage Your Own Keys** section is set to *Enabled*.

Configuring key rotation policy

It is recommended to rotate encryption keys at regular intervals to protect your keys. Azure Key Vault allows you to configure each key to automatically generate a new version at a specified interval. You can set up key rotation by configuring a key rotation policy, which can be defined individually for each key.

Key Vault key rotation feature requires key management permissions. You can assign the Key Vault Crypto Officer role to manage key rotation policies and perform on-demand key rotations. For the latest information about configuring the key rotation policy, refer to [Key Rotation Policy](#).

Removing user access

From the Account Management page you can remove Arctera Personal Archive and Arctera eDiscovery user access to the archive accounts that you select.

Note: If you want to remove deployed Arctera Personal Archive web folders, contact Arctera Services & Support.

To remove user access:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. Search for and select the archive account for which you want to remove user access.

For quick and advance searching, See [Searching for archive accounts](#).

3. On the action bar, click **Archives** and then click **Remove User**
4. On the **Remove Users** page, select one or more of the following deployment tasks:
 - **Disable DA Access** — removes Arctera eDiscovery access.
 - **Disable VAS Access** — removes Advanced Supervision access.
 - **Disable PA Access** — removes Arctera Personal Archive access.

5. Click **OK**

Disabling bulk user accounts

Prerequisite: Before you disable user accounts in bulk, ensure that the respective customers, who own these user accounts, have unlicensed these users. Otherwise, these user accounts get enabled again when you perform the O365 synchronization.

To disable bulk user accounts:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. On the action bar, click **Bulk Disable Users** The **Bulk Disable Users** dialog box appears.
3. Before you select multiple users for bulk disabling, assuming user name is [AAA@test.com](#) , select one of the following renaming patterns:
 - Select the **Rename with disabled string and datetime** option to rename it as **AAA-Disabled_On_Feb 11 2021 3:48AM@test.com**.
 - Select the **Rename with custom string** option, and specify the custom string is Disabled to rename it as [AAA-Disabled@test.com](#).
 - Select the **Rename with custom prefix string** option, and specify the custom prefix string is ZZZ or ZZZ_ to rename it as [ZZZ_AAA@test.com](#).
4. Search for and select multiple user accounts you want to disable simultaneously.
5. Click **Update** to initiate bulk disabling of user accounts.

Editing Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission for existing archive accounts

You can edit the Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission for one or more existing archive accounts.

Note: To make the Personal Archive Mobile Web Access feature available you must also enable Personal Archive Mobile Web Access under **Policy Management>Archive Options**. See [Configuring archive options](#).

Use any of the following procedures to set Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permissions for the existing archive accounts, as required.

To edit the **Personal Archive Mobile Web Access** permission for selected or all existing accounts:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. Do any of the following as required.

- To set the permission for the selected accounts, search for and select the archive accounts whose **Personal Archive Mobile Web Access** permissions you want to edit. Then, click **Mobile Permissions**.
- To set the permissions for all existing archive accounts, do not select any accounts. Instead, click **Mobile Permissions** on the action bar.

3. In the **Mobile Interface Account Permissions** window, select one of the following options:

- **Permit Personal Archive Mobile Web Access for selected accounts**

This option grants **Personal Archive Mobile Web Access** permission for the accounts you selected.

- **Permit Personal Archive Mobile Web Access for all current accounts**

Note: Take care when using this option, as it grants **Personal Archive Mobile Web Access** permission to all existing archive accounts.

- **Deny Personal Archive Mobile Web Access for selected accounts**

This option removes **Personal Archive Mobile Web Access** permission for the accounts you selected.

- **Deny Personal Archive Mobile Web Access for all current accounts**

Note: Take care when using this option, as it removes **Personal Archive Mobile Web Access** permission for all existing archive accounts.

4. Click **Save To edit the Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission for a single account:**
5. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

6. Search for and select the archive account whose Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission you want to edit.

In the account details page, under **Services**, the **Arctera Personal Archive Mobile** status indicates whether the Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission is set.

7. To change the Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission setting, click **Edit**
8. Under **Services**, select or clear **Arctera Personal Archive Mobile** as required.
9. Click **Save** to save your changes.

Unlocking an archive account

As a security measure, Arctera Unified Platform temporarily locks users out of their archive accounts if they enter their login credentials incorrectly five times within one hour. After users enter their credentials incorrectly three times, they are notified they have two additional attempts and are required to enter a CAPTCHA Validation Code. After they enter their credentials incorrectly five times, Arctera Unified Platform locks the archive account. If an account becomes locked, an administrator can remove the lock from Arctera Management Console.

To unlock an archive account:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Account Management**
2. From the accounts list, select the archive account that has been locked.
3. In the **Services** section of the account details page, clear **Account Locked**
4. Click **Save**

Exporting archive account information

You can export the account information for all archive accounts in your organization. Password information is not included in the export file.

Note: You can currently only export account information for all of the archive accounts. Even if you select individual accounts from the accounts list before you export the account information, the export file contains information for all accounts.

To export archive account information:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**

The application displays a list of archive accounts.

2. On the action bar, click **Export to Excel**

The application downloads the archive accounts information report on your local computer.

Editing contact details of a system administrator

You can edit the administrator and the billing contact details from two places.

- From Archive Overview > Archive Usage page. See [Archive Usage](#).
- From Configuration > Account Management page.

The procedure is explained below.

To edit contact details of a system administrator:

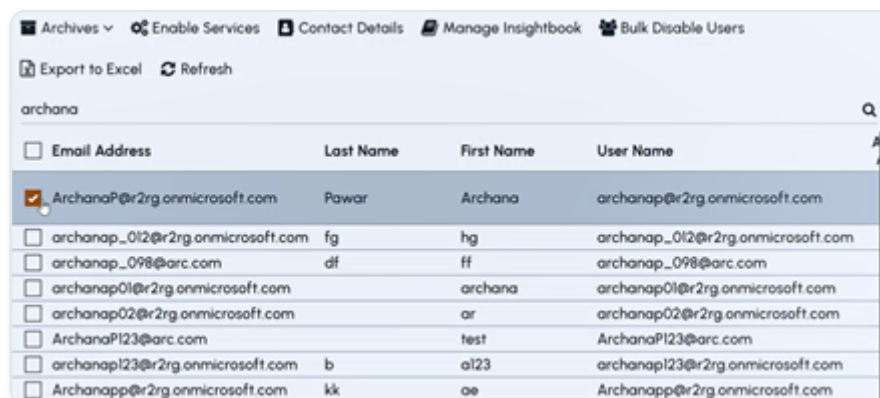
1. In the left navigation pane, click **Configuration>Account Management**
2. On the action bar, click **Contact Details**
3. Click **Edit** and provide a new admin contact and billing contact details.
4. Click **Save**

Managing InsightBooks permissions

Before you configure InsightBook permissions for a user account, you need to enable the Personal Archive InsightBooks option. See [Configuring archive options](#).

To configure InsightBooks permissions:

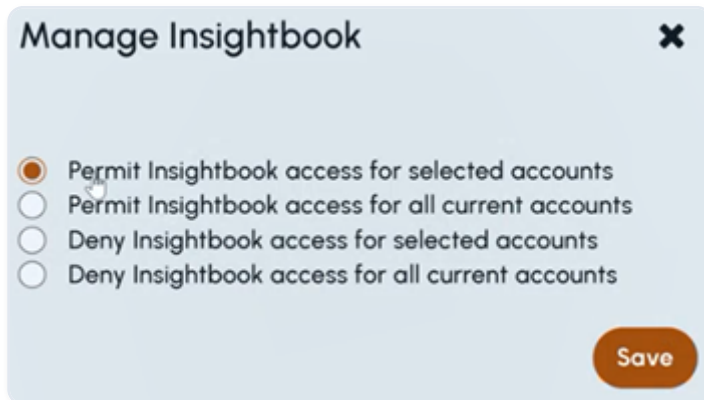
1. In the left navigation pane, click **Configuration>Account Management**
2. Search for and select a user account to which you want to grant the manage InsightBooks permission.



Email Address	Last Name	First Name	User Name
☒ Archanap01@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com	Pawar	Archana	archanap01@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com
☐ archanap_012@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com	fg	hg	archanap_012@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com
☐ archanap_098@arc.com	df	ff	archanap_098@arc.com
☐ archanap01@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com		archana	archanap01@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com
☐ archanap02@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com		ar	archanap02@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com
☐ ArchanaP123@arc.com		test	ArchanaP123@arc.com
☐ archanap123@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com	b	al23	archanap123@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com
☐ Archanapp@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com	kk	oe	Archanapp@r2rg.onmicrosoft.com

3. On the action bar, click **Manage InsightBooks** The *Manage InsightBooks* pop-up appears.

4. Select one of the following options, as needed.

A light blue dialog box titled "Manage Insightbook" with a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains four radio button options: "Permit Insightbook access for selected accounts" (selected), "Permit Insightbook access for all current accounts", "Deny Insightbook access for selected accounts", and "Deny Insightbook access for all current accounts". A brown "Save" button is located at the bottom right.

Manage Insightbook

- ☒ Permit Insightbook access for selected accounts
- ☐ Permit Insightbook access for all current accounts
- ☐ Deny Insightbook access for selected accounts
- ☐ Deny Insightbook access for all current accounts

Save

- **Permit InsightBook access for selected accounts** — To grant InsightBook access only to the accounts you manually choose.
- **Permit InsightBook access for all current accounts** — To grant InsightBook access to all existing accounts in the organization.
- **Deny InsightBook access for selected accounts** — To block InsightBook access only for the accounts you manually choose.
- **Deny InsightBook access for all current accounts** — To block InsightBook access for all existing accounts in the system.

5. Click **Save**

Managing Archive Collectors

This section includes the following topics:

- [About Archive Collectors](#)
- [Adding new archive collectors](#)
- [Updating configuration of existing archive collectors](#)
- [Stopping or restarting import job of archive collectors](#)
- [Viewing the latest status of Archive Collectors](#)
- [Cloning archive collectors](#)
- [Deleting an existing archive collector](#)
- [Deleting a history of archive collectors](#)
- [About Exchange Online Archiving](#)
- [About Bloomberg Archiving](#)
- [About Google Chat Archiving](#)
- [About Google Provisioning Archiving](#)
- [About Google Collection Archiving](#)
- [About ChatGPT conversation data Archiving](#)
- [About Google Messages Archiving](#)
- [About SCIM Archiving](#)
- [About Import Collector](#)
- [About Arctera Capture Services Archiving](#)
- [About Microsoft Teams \(Audio Video\) Archiving](#)
- [About Audio-Video Archiving](#)
- [About Audio-Video Archiving using NTR-X Collectors](#)
- [About Dubber Speik SMS Archiving](#)
- [About Dubber Speik Recordings Archiving](#)
- [About Text-Delimited Archiving](#)
- [About XSLT-XML Archiving](#)

- [About JSON Archiving](#)
- [About EML Archiving](#)
- [About iMessage Archiving](#)
- [About LinkedIn Archiving](#)
- [About Signal Archiving](#)
- [About Verint Archiving](#)
- [About WeChat Archiving](#)
- [About WhatsApp Archiving](#)
- [About Cloud9 Archiving](#)
- [About Verba Archiving](#)
- [About Copilot Archiving](#)
- [About Zoom Phone Archiving](#)

About Archive Collectors

In addition to email messages, your organization can use Arctera Unified Platform to archive items from other content sources. For a comprehensive list and detailed instructions on the available Arctera Capture connectors and their setup procedures, see [Arctera Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

Access Arctera Management Console and select the Archive Collectors node to enable the required collectors.

Adding new archive collectors

Before you add a collector, ensure that you have purchased its license.

To add a new archive collector:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**

Note: This node appears in the left navigation pane only if -

- the customer has purchased the services like Exchange Online, Microsoft Teams, OneDrive for Business and so on.
- The service is enabled for the customer.

2. On the **Archive collector** page, click **Add collector**. All the available collector types appear.
3. In the **Select type** field, select the category to narrow down the list of collectors.

Alternatively, in the **Search** field, type the collector name you want to search.

4. Select the collector, and click **Configure**. The corresponding collector configuration page appears.

Updating configuration of existing archive collectors

To update configuration of an existing archive collector:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**.

The application displays the available archive collector cards.

2. Select the archive collector for which you want to update the configuration.
3. Click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Manage**.
4. Provide the configuration details in the configuration wizard.

Refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#) to understand configuration fields of corresponding archive collectors (importers) and complete the configuration steps. After successful configuration, the updated archive collector appears in the Arctera Management Console.

Stopping or restarting import job of archive collectors

You may want to stop an import job in case of errors, incorrect or incomplete data, unexpected time consumption, necessary updates to requirements, or to address any specific issues. When you stop the collection job, the application removes the job from the queue.

Similarly, you may want to restart an import job waiting for the scheduled run. When you run the collection job, the application queues up the selected archive collector for collection.

To stop or restart the import job:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**.

The application displays the available archive collector cards.

2. To stop the import job, select the archive collector for which you want to stop the import job. Click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Stop**.

3. To restart the import job, select the archive collector for which you want to restart the import job. Click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Run Now**

Viewing the latest status of Archive Collectors

You can view the latest statuses (Idle, Queued, Running and Stopping) of the archive collectors.

To view the latest status of Archive Collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**

The application displays the available archive collector cards.

2. Select the archive collector of which you want to view the latest status.
3. Click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Refresh**

The application displays the latest state of the archive collector.

Cloning archive collectors

You can create a clone of archive collectors if you want to perform specific operations on an archive collector without disrupting its intended configuration and functions.

The cloned archive collector will keep the same configuration. You can change the configuration of the cloned archive collector as needed. You can create a clone of archive collectors in any state, whether it is idle, incomplete, or completed. The list of monitored users is not fixed. If new users have been added since the last run, the users list may vary, even for the same archive collector. Therefore, it is recommended to synchronize the user list before each run.

To create a clone of existing collector:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Select the archive collector from which you want to create a clone.
3. Click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Clone**
4. Provide a new unique name and description for the cloned archive collector.
5. Click **Next**

The application displays a notification that cloning is successful.

Deleting an existing archive collector

To delete an existing archive collector:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**

The application displays the available archive collector cards.

Note: The **Archive Collectors** node appears in the left navigation pane only if -

- The customer has purchased the services like Exchange Online, Microsoft Teams, OneDrive for Business and so on.
- The primary and secondary service is enabled for the customer

2. Select the archive collector you want to delete.
3. Click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Delete**

The application prompts you to confirm that you want to perform the operation.

4. Click **Yes**

Deleting a history of archive collectors

You can delete all the pre-specified data of archive collectors and use them just like new collectors.

Note: Be careful while deleting the data associated with the selected archive collector as you cannot retrieve it by any means.

To delete history of archive collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Select the archive collector from which you want to delete the data.
3. Click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Delete Collector Data**
4. The application prompts you to confirm that you want to perform the operation. Click **Yes**

About Exchange Online Archiving

As an administrator, you can create and enable an Exchange Online collector to collect items from the synchronized user accounts.

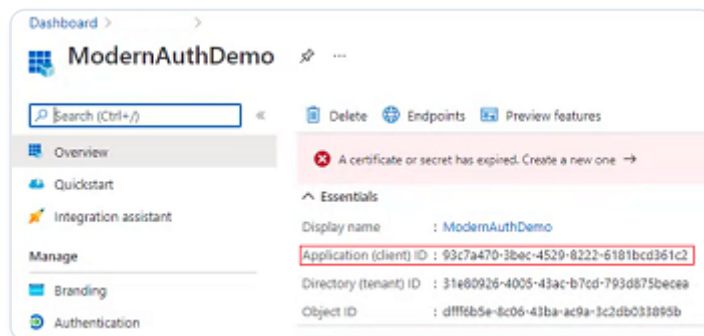
Setting up modern authentication in Azure AD for Exchange Online sync

If you want to use modern authentication for O365 sync, you need to configure an app in Azure AD. After you complete this setup, you get the Application (Client) ID and the primary domain details. These details are required to manage Exchange Online synchronization.

To set up modern authentication in Azure AD for Exchange Online sync:

1. Create a new Azure AD app.

To create app on the Azure Active Directory, you need to select **App Registrations** in the left navigation pane. click **New Registration**, and provide the user-facing display name of the application. click **Register**.



Copy and note the Application (Client) ID.

2. On the Azure AD portal, select **Certificates & secrets**, and upload the public key for a self-signed certificate created by you for the Azure AD app.

Note: You can use any secured method to create a self-signed certificate and a public key. However, in this sample scenario, to create a self-signed certificate and a public key, the Create-SelfSignedCertificate.ps1 script is executed. This script is available with the Exchange Online V2 module. Save or install the module from <https://www.powershellgallery.com/packages/ExchangeOnlineManagement/2.0.3> Example to create a self signed certificate using Create-SelfSignedCertificate.ps1 \< Location where ExchangeOnlineManagement is installed or saved

```
\>\ExchangeOnlineManagement\2.0.3\Create-SelfSignedCertificate.ps1 -CommonName AnimDemoCert -StartDate (Get-Date).Date -EndDate (Get-Date).Date.AddYears(1)
```

After successful execution of this script, a self-signed certificate (.CER) and the public key

(.PFX) will be created in the current working directory. You can use the .PFX certificate file in Arctera Unified Platform, and corresponding .CER certificate file in Azure Active Directory. Note the password used for the certificate. You need this password later while configuring the Exchange Online sync in Archive Administrator. In the above example, the self-signed certificate is valid for a year. You can choose the certificate expiry as required.

3. Upload the certificate (.CER file) that you have created in the previous step.

Select **Certificates & secrets** in the left navigation pane. Upload the certificate (.CER file) that you have created in the previous step.

Note: Certificates are the recommended way to connect to a registered Azure AD app and also Exchange Online V2 module only supports using certificates to connect to Exchange Online using a registered Azure AD app.

4. Provide the required API permissions to the app.

The following Azure AD app permissions are required for configuring Exchange Online sync with Modern Authentication:

Note: The following permissions are required to support for full functionality of this feature. Items noted below as optional can be omitted if the API permission is not used and the associated functionality is not required for your environment.

EXCHANGE WEB SERVICE	(OPTIONAL)
(EWS API\PROXY)	API PERMISSION USE: WEB FOLDER DEPLOYMENT
	NOTE: THIS PERMISSION IS REQUIRED FOR THE INITIAL CONFIGURATION, BUT IS OPTIONAL FOR ONGOING USE IF THIS FUNCTIONALITY IS NOT REQUIRED. YOU CAN REMOVE IT AFTER INITIAL CONFIGURATION.
	HOW TO CONFIGURE: EXCHANGE ONLINE EXCHANGE ONLINE > APPLICATION PERMISSIONS > OTHER PERMISSIONS > FULL_ACCESS_AS_APP
Exchange Online V2 (PowerShell)	(Required)API permission use: To get exchange related information like delegated permissions, DL membership, and DDL membership.API permission path: Exchange Online Exchange Online > Application permissions > Exchange > Exchange.ManageAsAppNote: Exchange.ManageAsApp permission is required. For reference, seeSet up app-only authenticationRole: One of the following roles is required. • Need to assign RBAC roles to the app. You can assign any of the following roles: Exchange Administrator : Use this role if you want the Exchange Online Sync connector create and manage journal address and journal rules in Exchange automatically for you. How to configure: AAD->Roles and Administrators->Exchange Administrator->Add Assignments->Search for the app->Select app-> Add Exchange Administrator Global Reader : Use this role if you prefer to create and manage journal address and journal rules in Exchange manually.

EXCHANGE WEB SERVICE	(OPTIONAL)
(EWS API\PROXY)	API PERMISSION USE: WEB FOLDER DEPLOYMENT
	NOTE: THIS PERMISSION IS REQUIRED FOR THE INITIAL CONFIGURATION, BUT IS OPTIONAL FOR ONGOING USE IF THIS FUNCTIONALITY IS NOT REQUIRED. YOU CAN REMOVE IT AFTER INITIAL CONFIGURATION.
	HOW TO CONFIGURE: EXCHANGE ONLINE EXCHANGE ONLINE > APPLICATION PERMISSIONS > OTHER PERMISSIONS > FULL_ACCESS_AS_APP
	How to configure: AAD->Roles and Administrators->Global Reader->Add Assignments->Search for the app-> Select app-> Add Global Reader. Note: You cannot see the App immediately after creating it. This could take 12-24 or more hours for the app to show up in the list to be selected. • Need to assign the Exchange Administrator role to add journal address in provisioning configuration automatically in exchange. • Else, the Global Reader role serves the same purpose for syncs.
Graph API	API permission use: To get user license and other information from Azure AD. How to configure: • MS Graph > Application permissions > User > User.Read.All • MS Graph > Application permissions > Directory > Directory.Read.AllPermissions to be assigned: You need to at least assign the User.Read.All permission to the application. Reference: See Permissions

5. To add the journal address automatically to Exchange, add app as an **Exchange Administrator** Alternatively, if you want to add the journal address manually, assigning the **Global Reader** role is enough.
6. From the Azure AD portal, select **Custom domain names** to view domain names for the Tenant.

Copy and note a domain **Name** that is **Available** and contains **.onmicrosoft.com **which is required to use as the **Tenant Name** for full functionality in the configuration of Exchange Online sync in Arctera Unified Platform.

Example: evcloud.onmicrosoft.com

Configuring Exchange Online sync

You must configure Exchange Online Sync if you selected the option on the User Management page to manage account provisioning with Exchange Online.

To set up Exchange Online Sync, you must first provide the credentials of a Office 365 account. After successful access to the Exchange Online Archiving service, you can do the provisioning and configuring steps. Finally, you need to schedule the Exchange Online sync.

To configure Exchange Online sync:

1. Navigate to the Arctera Management Console portal. Do any of the following:
 - In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>User Management**.

On the User Management page, ensure that the **Using Office 365** check box is selected. click **Save** and then click **Go to next step**.

Click the **Exchange Online** link to navigate to the Archive Collectors portal.

Arctera Management Console navigates you to the **My Configuration** page and guides you to perform the required configuration steps for the provisioning options you have selected.

- In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**.

The Archive Collectors portal appears.

Note: The Archive Collectors node appears in the left navigation pane, only when either of the following secondary services is selected:

- When the **Using Microsoft Office 365** check box is selected on the **User Management** page.
- When the **Bloomberg Archiving** check box is selected on the **Customer Details** page of the **Customer Service** tab.

By default, the **Exchange Online** page appears.

2. On the **Credential Management** page, specify the following:

CHOOSE OPTION TO CONNECT	SELECT THE OPTION THAT REPRESENTS THE MODERN AUTHENTICATION METHOD FOR CONNECTING TO THE EXCHANGE ONLINE PORTAL.
➤ AZURE AD REGISTERED APP CONFIGURATION	
Client ID	Client ID (also known as Registered Azure AD application ID) is the unique identifier that gets generated while setting up the modern authentication in Azure AD.
	Provide this application ID in this field.
Tenant Name	This is a Primary Domain for the Azure AD tenant.
	You can get this ID from the Tenant Information section on Overview page of Azure AD portal.
Certificate	Certificate is the Self-signed .PFX file.
	If a certificate is already uploaded, the Use existing certificate option appears by default. The thumbprint and expiry details of this certificate appears.
	To upload a new certificate, select the Use new certificate option, and upload the .PFX file.
Certificate Password	This is a password used for the self-signed certificate.

CHOOSE OPTION TO CONNECT	SELECT THE OPTION THAT REPRESENTS THE MODERN AUTHENTICATION METHOD FOR CONNECTING TO THE EXCHANGE ONLINE PORTAL.
\> AZURE AD REGISTERED APP CONFIGURATION	
	Provide this password when you upload a new certificate.

- Click **Test** to verify connection with Exchange Online endpoint.
- Click **Save** to navigate to the **Provisioning and configuration** tab.

Else, you can manually navigate to the **Provisioning and configuration** tab. The application displays the connection confirmation notification and the last successful connection date and time. This notification disappears in a few seconds.

- On the **Provisioning** page, do the following steps:

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
Domain Provisioning	Select one of the following options\:
	Provision specific domains: Select this option to choose the Exchange Online domains for which you want to provision archive accounts. Then click Specify Domains and select the required domains from the list. The Select Domains check box lists all the domains that are associated with the configured Exchange Online account.

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	To set a primary domain, select Set as Primary for the required domain. When you have chosen the domains, click OK to save the options you selected.
	Provision all domains: Select this option to provision archive accounts for all the Exchange Online domains that are associated with the configured Exchange Online account.
Archive Provisioning	Select one of the following options\:
	Provision Distribution Lists: Select this option to create archive accounts for the users that are associated with specific Exchange Online distribution lists for your company. Then click Specify Lists and select the required distribution lists.
	When you have chosen the distribution lists, click OK to save the options you selected.
	Provision Dynamic Distribution Lists: Select this option to create archive accounts for the users that are associated with specific Exchange Online dynamic distribution lists for your company. Then click Specify Lists and select the required dynamic distribution lists.

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	When you have chosen the dynamic distribution lists, click OK to save the options you selected.
	Provision all users: Select this option to provision archive accounts for all the users in the domains that you specified in the previous step.
SMTP Journaling	Select whether to provision journaling for Exchange Online Sync manually or automatically\:
	Manually provision journaling in Exchange Online:
	Select this option if you want to configure Exchange Online journaling manually from within the Exchange Online interface. If you choose this option, you must configure a suitable journaling rule manually in Exchange Online before you attempt to run a synchronization.
	Choose manual provisioning if you want to configure specific journaling rules, for example to journal for a named distribution group. Otherwise you can choose automatic provisioning.

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	For information on how to configure journaling manually for Exchange Online Sync, see Setting up Exchange Online journaling in the Arctera Unified Platform Journaling Guide.
	Note: The journal address that you must provide if you configure Exchange Online journaling manually is shown in the Journal address box under the Automatically provision journaling in Exchange Online option.
	Automatically provision journaling in Exchange Online: Select this option to let Arctera Management Console configure a journaling rule automatically in Exchange Online. Arctera Management Console attempts to create the journaling rule when you click Next at the end of this procedure. The rule journals all items to the assigned Exchange Online journal address.
	Arctera Management Console prepopulates the Journal address box with the Exchange Online journal address that Arctera Unified Platform has assigned to your company.
	Note: You must also set up a send connector for Exchange Online. See theSetting up

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	Exchange Online journalingsection in theArctera Journaling Guide.
Personal Archive Deployment Options	Under Web Folder Configuration, specify the following details: • Deploy Web Folder to Exchange Online: Select this check box if you want Exchange Online Sync to deploy a Arctera Personal Archive web folder when it provisions an archive account. • Archive Folder Name: Enter the name to use for the Arctera Personal Archive web folder, such as Personal Archive. • Archive Folder URL: Enter your access URL for Arctera Personal Archive. Under Personal Archive Access, configure whether Arctera Unified Platform automatically enables access to Arctera Personal Archive and sends a welcome message email to each user. • Enable Personal Archive access and send Welcome Message: Select this option to enable Arctera Personal Archive access to each account that is provisioned, and to enable welcome messages to be sent to the provisioned users. If you select this option, you must select one of the sub-options. • Don't send Welcome Message if already sent: Select this option to send a welcome message to a provisioned user only once. This is the default option. • Send Welcome Message anyway: Select this option to send a welcome message every time that

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	Exchange Online Sync synchronizes the account, even if a welcome message was sent previously. Click the Compose Welcome Message Template link to create a new welcome message notification.
Notification Options	Under Administration Roles to Notify , do the following\:
	Show Notify Roles: Click this option to select the roles you want to get notified. Expand the role to view number of users available under that role.
	Show Custom Roles: Click this option to select the customized roles you have created.

- Click **Next** to save the provisioning details, and navigate to the **Configuration** page.
- On the **Configuration** page, do the following steps:

SYNCHRONIZE SHARED MAILBOXES	SELECT THIS CHECK BOX TO TARGET EVERY SHARED MAILBOX FOR SYNCHRONIZATION
	IN ALL OF YOUR EXCHANGE ONLINE DOMAINS.
Mailbox Delegate Permissions	Select one of the following options to decide further action.

SYNCHRONIZE SHARED MAILBOXES	SELECT THIS CHECK BOX TO TARGET EVERY SHARED MAILBOX FOR SYNCHRONIZATION
	IN ALL OF YOUR EXCHANGE ONLINE DOMAINS.
	Do not synchronize delegation permissions: Perform no synchronization of mailbox delegation permissions. If any mailbox delegation permissions are
	already synchronized, these remain unaffected.
	Synchronize delegation permissions: Synchronize the delegation permissions that are applied to the targeted mailboxes. In Arctera Personal Archive a user is then able to access the archived content for each mailbox to which
	they have been granted delegate access.
	Remove synchronized delegation permissions: Remove any synchronized Exchange Online delegation permissions. All delegated access to Exchange Online archives is removed.

- Click **Next** to save the configuration details, and navigate to the **Exchange Online Sync Scheduler** page.
- On the **Exchange Online Sync Scheduler** page, do the following steps:

SYNC SCHEDULAR	SELECT THIS OPTION TO SET UP A SYNCHRONIZATION SCHEDULE. SPECIFY THE START DATE AND TIME FOR INITIATING THE SYNC.
Sync Now	Select this option to run the Exchange Online synchronization on demand. Click Run Now for initiating the sync.

10. Click **Next** to navigate to the **Summary** page.
11. On the **Summary** page, ensure the details. In case, you want to modify anything, click **Edit** to navigate to corresponding page.

About Exchange Online folder synchronization

Exchange Online folder synchronization is an add-on service for Arctera Unified Platform to synchronize Exchange Online mailbox folders of users to Arctera Personal Archive.

At present, customers are using the Folder Sync feature for folder synchronization of the on premise and exchange online users . However, the Exchange Online users are recommended to use the Exchange Online Folder Sync feature. Using Exchange Online folder synchronization is easy and beneficial for the following reasons:

- No need of any on premise hardware
- No need of any licenses like SQL Server, Windows Server, and so on
- Everything can be managed using Arctera Management Console.

You must perform the following activities while managing Exchange Online folder synchronization.

- Enabling the Exchange Online Folder Synchronization service
- Enabling individual users for folder synchronization
- Configuring App in Azure AD with required permissions. See [Setting up modern authentication in Azure AD for Exchange Online sync](#).
- Configuring Exchange Online folder synchronization
- Viewing status of individual users for Exchange Online folder synchronization

Prerequisite for migrating Exchange Online Users configured with Folder Sync to Exchange Online Folder Synchronization

Before you migrate users from the Folder Sync option to the Exchange Online Folder Sync option, you must understand the following aspects:

- Before you enable users for Exchange Online Folder Synchronization, make sure that these users are disabled in Folder Sync.
- If the users are enabled at both the places, then only the data received from the Exchange Online Folder Sync option is updated. However, the data received from the Folder Sync option is not considered while updating the folder structure.

Configuring Exchange Online folder synchronization

After specifying the required credentials, provisioning and configuring exchange online, you can schedule the Exchange Online folder synchronization.

Like Exchange Online Sync, the Exchange Online folder synchronization process uses modern authentication to use Graph APIs for fetching the folders related data from Exchange Online. To use modern authentication, you need to create and register an application Azure Active Directory for the tenant/domain in which the user accounts are available.

To understand the procedure to create an app in Azure Active Directory and assign Graph API permissions, See [Setting up modern authentication in Azure AD for Exchange Online sync](#). You can use the same app that is used for Exchange Online Sync with the additional Mail.ReadBasic.All permission. The Mail.ReadBasic.All permission needs to be an *Application* type permission and not a *Delegated* permission. Else, you can have a completely separate app for Exchange Online Folder Synchronization.

To configure Exchange Online folder synchronization:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive collector** page appears.

Note: The Archive Collectors node appears in the left navigation pane, only when either of the following secondary services is selected:

- When the Using Microsoft Office 365 check box is selected on the **User Management** page.
- When the **Bloomberg Archiving** check box is selected on the **Customer Details** page of the **Customer Service** tab.

2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the Exchange Online collector for which you want to configure the folder synchronization.

Note: If Exchange Online archive collector that you want to configure for folder synchronization is not listed, add a new collector. See [Adding new archive collectors](#).

4. Click on the Kebab icon (three vertical dots), and click **Manage**
5. On the **Credential Management** page, ensure that the **O365 Sync** check box is selected by default. Select the **Folder Sync** check box.
6. Under **Folder Sync** , specify the following:

USE SAME CREDENTIALS USED IN O365 SYNC	SELECT THIS CHECK BOX TO USE THE SAME AZURE AD APPLICATION THAT IS CONFIGURED FOR O365 SYNC.
	NOTE: IF YOU DO NOT SELECT THE USE SAME CREDENTIALS USED IN O365 SYNC CHECK BOX, SPECIFY OTHER CONFIGURATION PARAMETERS EXPLAINED IN TABLE BELOW.
Client ID	Provide the client ID of the application registered in the Azure Active Directory.
	One tenant can have different client IDs and certificates.
Tenant Name	Provide the Tenant or Domain name.
Certificate	Select the Use existing certificate option if you have already created the .PFX certificate for the registered application.
	Select the Add new certificate option to browse and select the new certificate.
Thumbprint	Specify the thumbprint which is used to validate the certificate.
Expires On	Specify the date of expiry for the mentioned certificate

7. Click **Test** below the Folder Sync option to test information provided for Folder Sync.
8. Click **Save** to navigate to the **Provisioning and configuration** tab.

Else, you can manually go to the **Provisioning and configuration** tab. The application displays the connection confirmation notification and the last successful connection date and time. This notification disappears in a few seconds.

Note: If the Exchange Online collector is already provisioned and configured, you can directly navigate to the Folder Sync Configuration tab (16). Else, follow step 9 to step 15 to provision and configure the collector.

9. On the **Provisioning** page, do the following steps:

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
Domain Provisioning	Select one of the following options\:
	Provision specific domains: Select this option to choose the Exchange Online domains for which you want to provision archive accounts. Then click Specify Domains and select the required domains from the list. The Select Domains check box lists all the domains that are associated with the configured Exchange Online account.
	To set a primary domain, select Set as Primary for the required domain. When you have chosen the domains, click OK to save the options you selected.
	Provision all domains: Select this option to provision archive accounts for all the Exchange Online domains that are

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	associated with the configured Exchange Online account.
Archive Provisioning	Select one of the following options\:
	Provision Distribution Lists: Select this option to create archive accounts for the users that are associated with specific Exchange Online distribution lists for your company. Then click Specify Lists and select the required distribution lists.
	When you have chosen the distribution lists, click OK to save the options you selected.
	Provision Dynamic Distribution Lists: Select this option to create archive accounts for the users that are associated with specific Exchange Online dynamic distribution lists for your company. Then click Specify Lists and select the required dynamic distribution lists.
	When you have chosen the dynamic distribution lists, click OK to save the options you selected.
	Provision all users: Select this option to provision archive accounts for all the users in the domains that you specified in the previous step.

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
SMTP Journaling	Select whether to provision journaling for Exchange Online Sync manually or automatically\:
	Manually provision journaling in Exchange Online:
	Select this option if you want to configure Exchange Online journaling manually from within the Exchange Online interface. If you choose this option, you must configure a suitable journaling rule manually in Exchange Online before you attempt to run a synchronization.
	Choose manual provisioning if you want to configure specific journaling rules, for example to journal for a named distribution group. Otherwise you can choose automatic provisioning.
	For information on how to configure journaling manually for Exchange Online Sync, see Setting up Exchange Online journaling in the Arctera Unified Platform Journaling Guide.
	Note: The journal address that you must provide if you configure Exchange Online journaling manually is shown in the Journal address box under the Automatically

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	provision journaling in Exchange Online option.
	Automatically provision journaling in Exchange Online: Select this option to let Arctera Management Console configure a journaling rule automatically in Exchange Online. Arctera Management Console attempts to create the journaling rule when you click Next at the end of this procedure. The rule journals all items to the assigned Exchange Online journal address.
	Arctera Management Console prepopulates the Journal address box with the Exchange Online journal address that Arctera Unified Platform has assigned to your company.
	Note: You must also set up a send connector for Exchange Online. See Setting up Exchange Online journaling in the Arctera Unified Platform Journaling Guide.
Personal Archive Deployment Options	Under Web Folder Configuration, specify the following details: • Deploy Web Folder to Exchange Online: Select this check box if you want Exchange Online Sync to deploy a Arctera Personal Archive web folder when it provisions an archive account. • Archive Folder Name: Enter the name to use for the Arctera Personal Archive web folder, such as Personal Archive. • Archive Folder URL: Enter

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	your access URL for Arctera Personal Archive.Under Personal Archive Access, configure whether Arctera Unified Platform automatically enables access to Arctera Personal Archive and sends a welcome message email to each user. • Enable Personal Archive access and send Welcome Message: Select this option to enable Arctera Personal Archive access to each account that is provisioned, and to enable welcome messages to be sent to the provisioned users. If you select this option, you must select one of the sub-options. • Don't send Welcome Message if already sent: Select this option to send a welcome message to a provisioned user only once. This is the default option. • Send Welcome Message anyway: Select this option to send a welcome message every time that Exchange Online Sync synchronizes the account, even if a welcome message was sent previously.Click the Compose Welcome Message Template link to create a new welcome message notification.
Notification Options	Under Administration Roles to Notify , do the following\:
	Show Notify Roles: Click this option to select the roles you want to get notified. Expand the

SYNCHRONIZE USER NAME FROM	SELECT ONE OF THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS\:
	EMAIL ADDRESS: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE PRIMARY EMAIL ADDRESS ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	USER PRINCIPAL NAME: SELECT THIS OPTION TO MATCH THE USERNAME WITH THE USER PRINCIPAL NAME ASSOCIATED WITH THE ARCHIVE ACCOUNT.
	role to view number of users available under that role.
	Show Custom Roles: Click this option to select the customized roles you have created.

10. Click **Next** to save the provisioning details, and navigate to the **Configuration** page.
11. On the **Configuration** page, do the following steps:

SYNCHRONIZE SHARED MAILBOXES	SELECT THIS CHECK BOX TO VIEW THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS: • SYNCHRONIZE SHARED MAILBOXES : SELECT THIS CHECK BOX TO TARGET EVERY SHARED MAILBOX FOR SYNCHRONIZATION IN ALL OF YOUR EXCHANGE ONLINE DOMAINS. • KEEP PERSONAL ARCHIVE LOGIN ENABLED FOR ALL SHARED MAILBOXES : SELECT THIS CHECK BOX TO ALLOW USERS (WHO ARE BLOCKED BY MICROSOFT TO ACCESS EXCHANGE ONLINE) TO ACCESS THEIR SHARED MAILBOXES AVAILABLE ON PERSONAL ARCHIVE. USUALLY, WHEN MICROSOFT BLOCKS THE SIGN-IN STATUS OF A USER, THE ARCTERA UNIFIED PLATFORM ADMINISTRATOR ALSO BLOCKS THAT USER TO ACCESS EXCHANGE ONLINE AND PERSONAL ARCHIVE. AFTER YOU SELECT THIS CHECK BOX, ALL THE SHARED MAILBOXES, WHICH ARE IN THE SCOPE OF SYNCHRONIZATION, WITH A SIGN-IN STATUS AS BLOCKED FROM MICROSOFT, REMAIN ENABLED IN ARCTERA UNIFIED PLATFORM.
Mailbox Delegate Permissions	Select one of the following options to decide further action.
	Do not synchronize delegation permissions: Perform no synchronization of mailbox delegation permissions. If any mailbox delegation permissions are
	already synchronized, these remain unaffected.
	Synchronize delegation permissions: Synchronize the delegation permissions that are applied to the targeted mailboxes. In Arctera Personal Archive a user is then able to access the archived content for each mailbox to which
	they have been granted delegate access.

SYNCHRONIZE SHARED MAILBOXES	SELECT THIS CHECK BOX TO VIEW THE FOLLOWING OPTIONS: • SYNCHRONIZE SHARED MAILBOXES : SELECT THIS CHECK BOX TO TARGET EVERY SHARED MAILBOX FOR SYNCHRONIZATION IN ALL OF YOUR EXCHANGE ONLINE DOMAINS. • KEEP PERSONAL ARCHIVE LOGIN ENABLED FOR ALL SHARED MAILBOXES : SELECT THIS CHECK BOX TO ALLOW USERS (WHO ARE BLOCKED BY MICROSOFT TO ACCESS EXCHANGE ONLINE) TO ACCESS THEIR SHARED MAILBOXES AVAILABLE ON PERSONAL ARCHIVE. USUALLY, WHEN MICROSOFT BLOCKS THE SIGN-IN STATUS OF A USER, THE ARCTERA UNIFIED PLATFORM ADMINISTRATOR ALSO BLOCKS THAT USER TO ACCESS EXCHANGE ONLINE AND PERSONAL ARCHIVE. AFTER YOU SELECT THIS CHECK BOX, ALL THE SHARED MAILBOXES, WHICH ARE IN THE SCOPE OF SYNCHRONIZATION, WITH A SIGN-IN STATUS AS BLOCKED FROM MICROSOFT, REMAIN ENABLED IN ARCTERA UNIFIED PLATFORM.
	Remove synchronized delegation permissions: Remove any synchronized Exchange Online delegation permissions. All delegated access to Exchange Online archives is removed.

12. Click **Next** to save the configuration details, and navigate to the **Exchange Online Sync Scheduler** page.
13. On the **Exchange Online Sync Scheduler** page, specify the following:

SYNC SCHEDULAR	SELECT THIS OPTION TO SET UP A SYNCHRONIZATION SCHEDULE. SPECIFY THE START DATE AND TIME FOR INITIATING THE SYNC.
Sync Now	Select this option to run the Exchange Online synchronization on demand. Click Run Now for initiating the sync.

14. Click **Next** to navigate to the **Summary** page.
15. On the **Summary** page, ensure the details. In case, you want to modify anything, click **Edit** to navigate to corresponding page.
16. On the **Folder Sync Configuration** page, specify the following:

MAILBOX SETTINGS
Autoselect new Mailboxes
Deselect disabled Mailboxes
Concurrent Mailboxes
Next run at
Repeat
Skip these folders while syncing

Schedule

17. Click **Save**
18. To view your folder synchronization job progress and status, select the **Job List** tab.

The page displays the last successful run date and time, total number of exchange online accounts available, and number of accounts that are enabled for folder synchronization.

- To view Exchange Online Folder Synchronization jobs, select **Exchange Online Sync**.
- To view Folder Sync jobs, select **Folder Sync**.
- To refresh the page details, click the **Refresh** icon.
- If required, click the **Export** icon to export the job list in the CSV format.

Configuring Microsoft Azure Active Directory Group synchronization

Active Directory Group synchronization is an additional service for Arctera Unified Platform. After configuring, it synchronizes user groups, nested groups, and their respective users between Microsoft Azure AD and the Arctera Unified Platform database. This synchronization is unidirectional, occurring solely from Azure AD to the Arctera Unified Platform database.

To configure Microsoft Azure AD Group synchronization:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>User Management** Ensure that the **Using Microsoft Office 365** check box is selected. click **Save** and then click **Go To Next Step**.
2. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** , and do any of the following:
 - To add a new Exchange Online collector, click **Add Collector**.
 - To edit configuration of an existing collector, select the Exchange Online collector, click the kebab icon and click **Manage**.
3. On the **Credential Management** page, perform the actions mentioned in the next steps.
4. Configure O365 Account Synchronization. See [Configuring Exchange Online sync](#).
5. After configuring O365 Account synchronization, expand the **Active Directory Group Sync Configuration** section, and specify the following details:

USE THE SAME CREDENTIAL AS O365 SYNC	SELECT THIS CHECK BOX IF YOU WANT TO UTILIZE THE SAME CREDENTIALS THAT YOU HAVE USED FOR O365 ACCOUNT SYNCHRONIZATION.
	THE CLIENT ID AND TENANT NAME VALUES THAT ARE UTILIZED DURING O365 ACCOUNT SYNCHRONIZATION APPEARS AUTOMATICALLY IN THE CORRESPONDING FIELDS.
Client ID	Client ID (or Azure AD App ID) is a unique identifier generated during modern authentication setup in Azure AD. Enter the Azure AD App ID. The configured Azure AD needs the following permissions to fetch the client ID. • Mandatory permission required : User.Read.All • Any one of the following (from least to most privileged) permissions required: GroupMember.Read.All Group.Read.All Directory.Read.All If required, refer to the Microsoft help on Graph Permissions
Tenant Name	Tenant name is a Primary Domain for the Azure AD tenant.

USE THE SAME CREDENTIAL AS O365 SYNC	SELECT THIS CHECK BOX IF YOU WANT TO UTILIZE THE SAME CREDENTIALS THAT YOU HAVE USED FOR O365 ACCOUNT SYNCHRONIZATION.
	THE CLIENT ID AND TENANT NAME VALUES THAT ARE UTILIZED DURING O365 ACCOUNT SYNCHRONIZATION APPEARS AUTOMATICALLY IN THE CORRESPONDING FIELDS.
	Enter the primary domain ID.
	You can get this ID from the Tenant Information section on the Overview page of Azure AD portal.
Choose certificate > Use new certificate	Certificate is the Self-signed .PFX file.
	Select this option to upload a new certificate.
	Click Choose Certificate to select the appropriate certificate, and provide the password. This is a password used for the self-signed certificate.
Choose certificate > Use existing certificate	Select this option to upload an existing certificate.
	If a certificate is already uploaded, this option is selected by default. The thumbprint and expiry details of the certificate appears automatically.
Thumbprint	Specify the certificate's thumbprint for validation purposes.
Expires on	Specify the certificate's expiration date.

- Click **Test** to verify connection with the O365 account.
- If the tested connection is successful, click **Save** to navigate to the **Provisioning and Configuration** tab.

8. Ensure that the **Active Directory Groups** tab appears on the Exchange Online page. Select the tab to view the synchronized Active Directory Groups.
9. Select the **Job List** tab to view your folder synchronization job progress and status for Exchange Online, Folder Sync, and AD Groups.

About Bloomberg Archiving

The Bloomberg Archiving service is an add-on feature that lets customers archive the files and instant messages that are associated with their Bloomberg L.P. Professional service (Bloomberg Terminal). When this service is enabled, such items are archived by using the Arctera Unified Platform application and are available for discovery by using the Arctera eDiscovery application.

For more information on Bloomberg Archiving, refer to the Bloomberg section of [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Google Chat Archiving

You can capture the Google Chat items by using Google's built-in third-party archiving solution. When the Google Chat service is enabled, the chats that are converted to emails are sent to a journal/archive address during regular intervals. Such items are then archived by using the Arctera Unified Platform application and are available for discovery by using the Arctera eDiscovery application.

For more information on Google Chat Archiving, refer to the Google Chat section of [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

Configuring Google Chat Archiving

To set up a third-party archiving solution:

1. Sign in to Google Admin console by using your administrator account.
2. Select **Menu>Apps>Google Workspace>Google Chat**
3. Click **Third-party Archiving Settings**
4. To apply the setting to everyone, leave the top organizational unit selected. Otherwise, select a child organizational unit.
5. Check **Archiving enabled**
6. In **Destination** address, enter the email address where you want to send journal messages.

This will be an email address at the third-party archiving provider. You can enter only one address.

7. In the **Archival frequency** field, enter how often messages should be generated (every 1-24 hours).
8. (Optional) In **Custom headers** , enter a comma-separated list of any email message headers that should be used to uniquely identify Chat messages.
9. Click **Save**
10. For more information, see [Integrate Chat with a third-party archiving solution - Google Workspace Admin Help](#).

Here are additional observations about this process:

- Google does not have the name of the room/space, only a GUID is provided.
- Each participant will get a copy of the chat in their archive. Hence custodians can be targeted for search individually.
- Use a period of 24hrs and not less for Archival frequency.

About Google Provisioning Archiving

Arctera Management Console supports archiving user data and mail-enabled user groups from Google Provisioning without the need for additional licenses from Google. Administrators must have adequate privileges to configure Single Sign-On (SSO) settings that enable data archiving from Google Provisioning. For a successful configuration, perform the following steps:

Step 1: [Configuring Google Provisioning for SAML and SSO authentication to your custom SAML app](#)

Step 2: [Enabling the Google Workspace service](#)

Step 3: [Configuring Google Provisioning Archiving Collector](#)

Configuring Google Provisioning for SAML and SSO authentication to your custom SAML app

Prerequisites

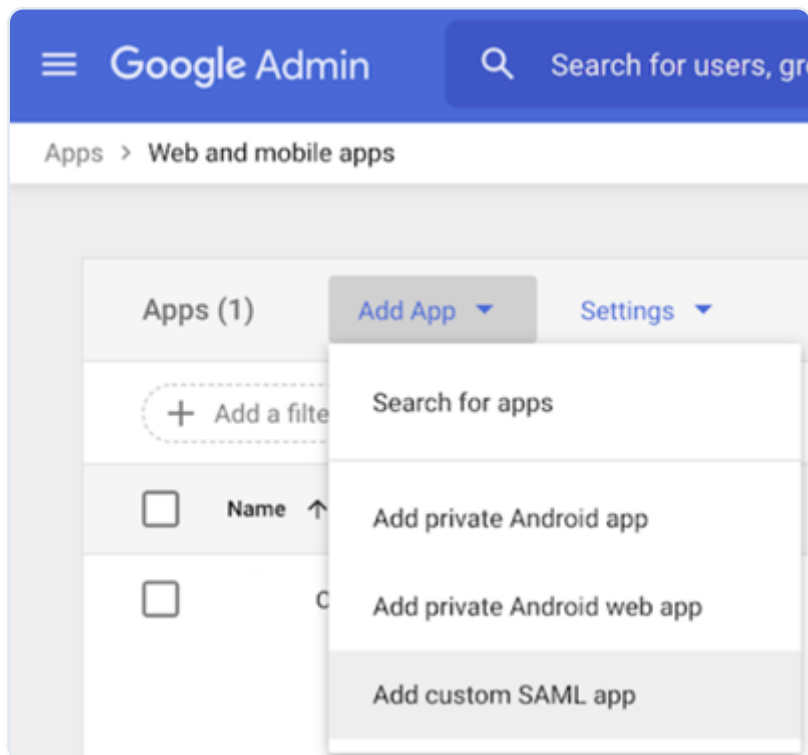
You must have the super administrator role/privileges to configure Google Provisioning for SAML and SSO authentication to your custom SAML app. Upon successful configuration, the SSO sends

a SAML request to the Google Provisioning as an Identity Provider (IdP) and then sends a SAML response to the SSO confirming the user identity.

Note: This section provides a quick references for configuring Google Provisioning for SAML and SSO authentication. However, for precise configuration procedure, refer to Google Provisioning Admin Help documentation: [Set up you own custom SAML application](#).

To configure Google Provisioning for SAML and SSO authentication to your custom SAML app:

1. Log in to the [Google Admin console](#) as a super administrator.
2. Select **Apps>Web and mobile apps**



3. Click **Add App** and select **Add custom SAML app** as shown in the sample image below, and perform the following steps:

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Add custom SAML app" with a close button (X) in the top left. Below the title is a progress bar with four steps: 1. App details (active), 2. Google Identity Provider detail, 3. Service provider details, and 4. Attribute mapping. The main content area is titled "App details" and contains the text: "Enter details for your custom SAML app. This information is shared with app users. [Learn more](#)". There is a text input field labeled "App name". Below this is a section titled "App icon" with the text "Attach an app icon. Maximum upload file size: 4 MB". At the bottom right of the dialog are two buttons: "CANCEL" and "CONTINUE".

- On the **App details** page, specify a unique app name, description, and app icon, and then click **Continue**.

Uploading an app icon is optional. If you do not upload the icon, Google Provisioning creates a new icon using the first two letters of your app name. This information is shared with the custom SAML app users. (This icon will be shown on the **App settings** page and in the **Web and mobile apps** list.)

- On the **Google Identity Provider details** page, use one of the following options to get the required setup information. These crucial parameters are needed to configure the SSO Integration and verify connectivity between Google Provisioning and the custom SAML app.
- **Option 1** : Download the IDP metadata file.
- **Option 2** : Copy the SSO URL, Entity ID, and SAML 2.0 Certificate. Save this information securely to use while setting up a service provider.
- On the **Service provider details** page, enter the following details:
- **ACS URL** : Enter the URL that should receive the SAML response after authentication. It must begin with https://.
- **Entity ID** : Enter the Entity ID copied from the previous step.
- **Start URL** : (Optional) Enter the URL to which the SAML app should redirect users after successful login/authentication to the app.

- **Signed Response** : (Optional) Select if the service provider requires the entire SAML authentication response to be signed. Do not select this option if the service provider requires only the assertion within the response to be signed.
- **Name ID format** : Define the naming format supported by Google Provisioning. Select the *Email* format from the drop-down list.
- **Name ID** : Select *Basic Information > Primary email*.
- On the **Attribute mapping** page, click **Add Mapping** and use the *Username* ,*Primary email* , *First name* , and *Last name* Google Directory attributes and App attributes as shown in the sample image below.

Add custom SAML app

App details — Google Identity Provider detail: — Service provider details — **4 Attribute mapping**

Attributes

Add and select user fields in Google Directory, then map them to service provider attributes. Attributes marked with * are mandatory. [Learn more](#)

Google Directory attributes		App attributes	
Basic Information > First name	→	firstName	×
Basic Information > Last name	→	lastName	×
Basic Information > Primary email	→	email	×

ADD MAPPING

BACK **CANCEL** **FINISH**

4. Click **Finish**
5. Select **Apps>Web and mobile apps** , and open your custom SAML app.
6. Ensure that the parameters configured for the app are appearing correctly.
7. On the **User Access** pane, click **View details** , and do the following:
 - Select the required users, groups, or organizational units (OUs) to which you want to enable the service. By default, no users, groups, or organizational units have permission to access the app.
 - In the **Service status** section, click **ON for everyone**, and then click **Save** to activate the service for all selected users.

8. On the **User Access** pane, in the left pane, click **Test SAML login**. The SAML app should open in a separate tab. If it does not open, check the error messages, update your Identity Provider and Service Provider settings as needed, and then test the SAML login again.

Usually, the change takes place quickly but sometimes it may take up to 24 hours.

Enabling the Google Workspace service

After successful SAML-Based Single Sign-On configuration, administrators need to enable the Google Workspace service in the Arctera Management Console.

To enable the Google Workspace service:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>User Management**. On the User Management page, select **Manage Account Provisioning Remotely>Using Google Workspace**.
2. Click **Save** and then click **Go to next step**.
3. Ensure the **Configuration Summary** page displays the completion of the Google Workspace configuration.

Configuring Google Provisioning Archiving Collector

Administrators need to set up Google Provisioning archive collector in Arctera Management Console for archiving user data and mail-enabled user groups from Google Workspace.

To configure Google Provisioning archive:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**.
2. On the **Archive Collector** page, click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select an unsupported collector, it disables the Configure button to prevent its configuration.

3. Select the **Google Provisioning** card and click **Configure**. The **Google Workspace Account Provisioning** page appears.
4. On the **Provisioning and Configuration** tab, specify the following information and click **Next** to proceed to the next page.

PROVISIONING
Provisioning Domains scope
Archive Provisioning
Provision Groups in scope as Archives
Personal Archive Deployment Options
Impersonate User Email
Choose Certificate
Service User Email
Sync Scheduler
Run Now
Go to Job List
Configuration Summary

Credential Management Upon accessing this page, a notification is shown that prompts you to enable the API Client OAuth 2.0 scopes based on the selected provisioning options. You need to create a service account and setup a client with the necessary API Client OAuth 2.0 Scopes. To better understand the procedures, refer to the following documentation. [Create a Google Cloud Service Account Set up domain-wide delegation for a client](#) After creating a Google Cloud Service Account and configuring domain-wide delegation for a client, click Test Connection to verify if the connection works. Scheduler Summary

- After successful synchronization of accounts, in the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Account Management**. Ensure that the accounts for which you have created archives are available. You can view the account user details, the status, services subscribed and enabled or disabled for users, archive aliases, and history of the account.

If the data is not getting synchronized properly, contact your system administrator.

About Google Collection Archiving

An administrator can add a Google Collection collector to collect enterprise-level Google-specific conversation data. The collected data includes data from Google Chat, Gmail, and Drive. For a successful configuration, perform the following steps:

Step 1: See [Enabling the Google Workspace Collection Service for a user account](#).

Step 2: See [Configuring the Google Collection archive](#).

After successful configuration, this collector can be added to Arctera eDiscovery for archiving Google Chat, Gmail, and Drive data.

Enabling the Google Workspace Collection Service for a user account

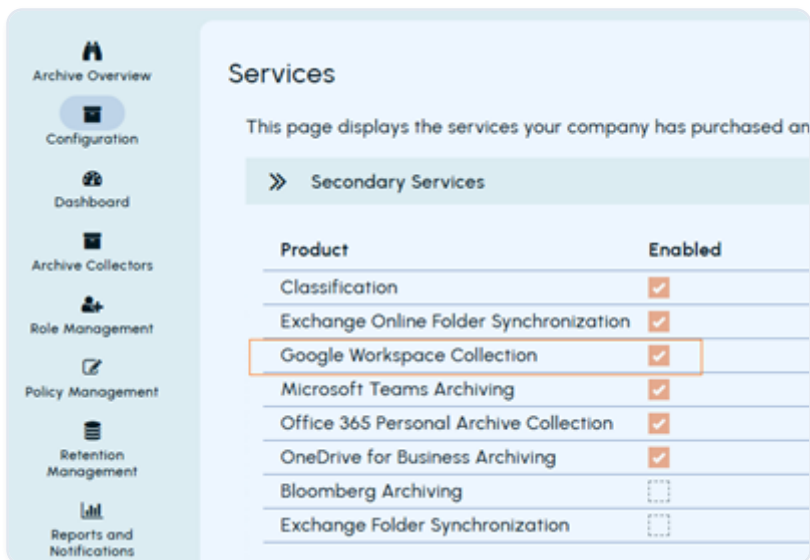
A customer user accounts can view the Google Workspace collector only if the Google Workspace Service is enabled for them in the Arctera Management Console. Therefore, as a super administrator, you must enable the Google Workspace Collection secondary service for the required customer account.

To enable the Google Workspace Collection Service:

1. Log in as a super administrator in Arctera Management Console.
2. In the left navigation pane, click **Customer Service**, and select the **Company Details** tab.
3. Under the **Admin Account Details** section, in the **Secondary Services**, select **Google Workspace Collection**
4. Click **Save** Upon enabling this service, the administrator from the customer's side can view the Google Collection card in Archive Collectors.

Configuring the Google Collection archive

Before you begin, ensure that the *Google Workspace Collection* secondary service is enabled for you. To verify this, in the Arctera Management Console, navigate to Configuration > Services, and check if the *Google Workspace Collection* secondary service is selected.



After you configure the Google Collection archive, the system automatically creates separate collector instances based on the selected source types (Gmail, Chat, or Drive). Each instance uses a corresponding suffix: -Gmail, -Chat, or -Drive.

To configure the Google Collection archive:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**
2. On the **Archive Collector** page, click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select an unsupported collector, it disables the Configure button to prevent its configuration.

3. Select the **Google Collection** card and click **Configure**
4. In the **Add Importer** pop-up, specify a unique name and description for this archive collector.

The **Google Workspace Account Provisioning** page appears.

5. In the **Impersonate User Email** field, specify the email address of a Google Workspace user who has access to the data you want to archive.

The collector uses this account to access and collect data from Google Workspace. The service account does not access data directly; it uses this user account's permissions to perform the collection.

6. Click **Upload Certificate** to select an existing certificate (JSON file) or upload a new one. The certificate contains the service account credentials required to securely connect to Google Workspace.

7. Click **Test Connection** to validate the configuration.

Note: You must test the connection before saving to verify that the API client has the required scopes configured. The **Save** option remains disabled until the connection test is successful. For more information about creating a Google Cloud service account and configuring domain-wide delegation, follow the instructions provided in the user interface.

8. Upon successful connection, click **Save**
9. Verify that the configured Google Collection archive collector appears in the collectors list.

In the left navigation pane, go to **Archive Collectors**. In the **Search** field, enter the collector name and confirm that it is listed.

About ChatGPT conversation data Archiving

An administrator can add a ChatGPT collector that uses the OpenAI Enterprise Compliance API to collect enterprise-level ChatGPT conversation data. The collected data includes prompts, responses, and associated metadata from the organization's ChatGPT workspace. The collector archives and indexes the data for search, legal hold, and investigation in Arctera eDiscovery to support enterprise compliance, audit, and legal workflows.

You can view and configure ChatGPT chats archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the ChatGPT service under Capture Secondary services.

See [Configuring ChatGPT archive collectors](#).

Configuring ChatGPT archive collectors

To configure a ChatGPT archive collector:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **ChatGPT** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
6. Click **Next**

The application creates the ChatGPT collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Google Messages Archiving

An administrator can add a Google Messages collector to collect enterprise-level Google Messages conversation data. The collected data includes SMS and RCS messages and associated metadata from managed devices. The collector archives and indexes the data for search, legal hold, and investigation in Arctera eDiscovery to support enterprise compliance, audit, and legal workflows.

You can view and configure Google Messages archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Google Messages service under Capture Secondary services.

See [Configuring Google Messages archiving collectors](#).

Configuring Google Messages archiving collectors

To configure a Google Messages archive collector:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Google Messages** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.

5. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
6. Click **Next**

The application creates the Google Messages collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About SCIM Archiving

System for Cross-domain Identity Management (SCIM) is an open standard specification designed to manage user identity information by providing distinct schema for authentication to automate the task of data provisioning.

To archive customer data from Exchange and Active Directory, Arctera Unified Platform relies on the O365 service that needs customer administrator credentials. To adhere with their data security policy, customers either share minimal data with Arctera Unified Platform or want to configure SCIM independently.

Customers can use the SCIM feature to specify the data they want to share with Arctera Unified Platform through a schema. The *Azure Active Directory Provisioning* service subsequently transfers this data from the customer's environment to the SCIM endpoint. This approach empowers customers with full control over their data.

Note: At present, SCIM relies on additional supporting provisioning services, such as CloudLink or O365, for functionalities like delegate permission, web folder push, and more. Consequently, it is essential to configure any other supporting provisioning service separately from SCIM to achieve complete user provisioning.

The Email Alias for provisioning users accepts unregistered domains, which initially remain inactive. Upon receiving the SCIM request, Arctera Unified Platform automatically includes these unregistered domains in the group domain. However, emails from these inactive domains cannot be archived. Customers seeking updates on such unregistered domains can contact the SCIM support team.

The following sections explain the procedure to configure SCIM, its database details, location of logs, troubleshooting solutions, and the necessary infrastructure.

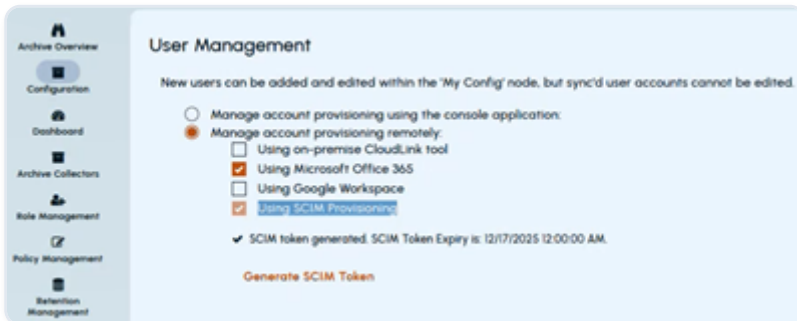
[Configuring SCIM archiving by using Azure Active Directory](#)

Configuring SCIM collectors by using SCIM provisioning

Configuring SCIM collectors by using SCIM provisioning

Prerequisite

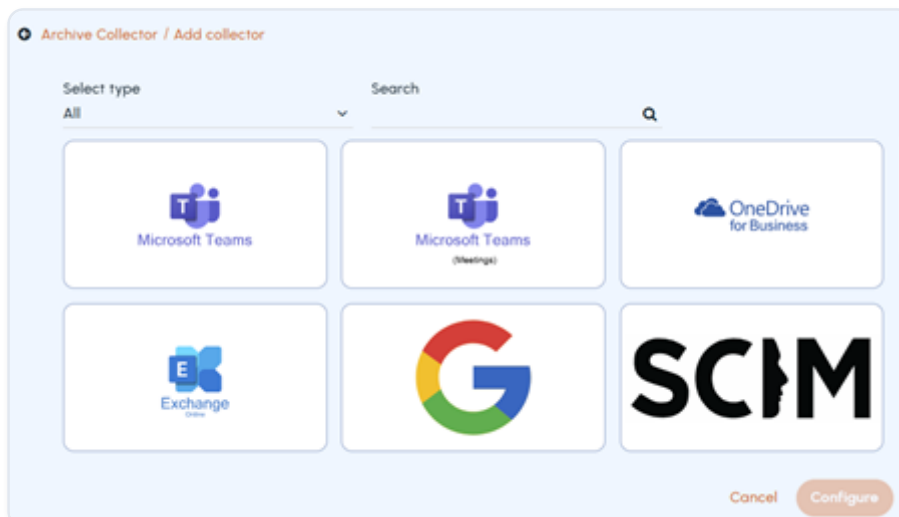
Before configuring the SCIM collector with SCIM provisioning, ensure you select the Using SCIM Provisioning option under Manage account provisioning remotely on the User Management page in the management console.

**To configure Signal archiving collectors:**

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**. The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **SCIM** card, and click **Configure**



The **SCIM Account Provisioning** page appears.

4. In the **Credential Management** section, click **Generate New SCIM** to generate a new.

Note: Keep the SCIM secure, as you cannot copy it again after generating it. The expiry date of the is displayed for your reference.

Close the details pop-up and click **Next**.

5. In the **Provisioning** section, select options to enable Personal Archive access for provisioned accounts and to send a welcome message. click **Compose Welcome Message Template** to define the welcome message content.

Close the welcome message pop-up and click **Next**.

6. In the **Summary** section, ensure the details. In case, you want to modify anything, click **Edit** to navigate to corresponding page. Then click **Next** Upon successful provisioning, the SCIM collector card is displayed on the **Archive Collectors** page. You can manage this collector from that location as well.

Configuring SCIM archiving by using Azure Active Directory

Before configuring SCIM archiving, review the following points to ensure proper configuration.

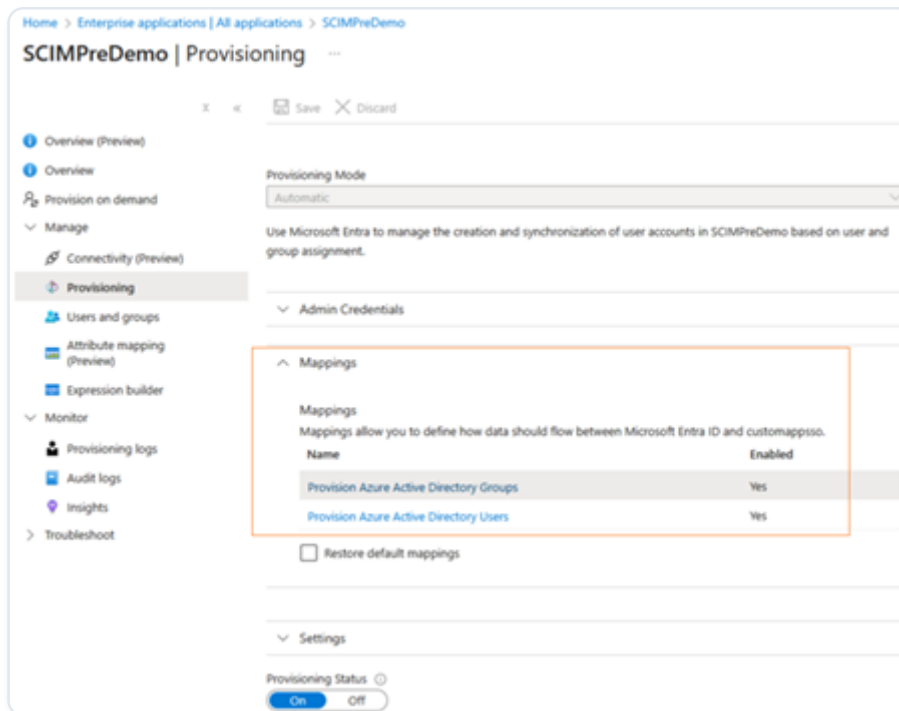
- The SCIM app pushes user and group objects along with any membership delta.
- Only direct members can be provisioned.
- Nested groups are not automatically flattened. Native recursion is not supported. Groups containing sub-groups require flat expansion.
- Users must be provisioned before groups. Azure AD enforces this sequence. If Arctera Unified Platform rejects membership references, groups are created but members remain empty until users exist.
- Guest users with object IDs in Azure AD can be provisioned and assigned as members in Arctera Unified Platform.
- Shared mailboxes are supported if they are in scope and active.

To configure SCIM archiving by using Azure Active Directory:

1. Ensure that your enterprise application is added to your Azure Active Directory tenant.

For more information, refer to [Adding an application on Azure AD portal](#)

2. Sign in to the [Microsoft Entra admin center](#) as an Administrator.
3. Browse to **Entra ID>Enterprise Applications** , and select your application.
4. In the left navigation pane, select **Provisioning**
5. On the Provisioning page, expand the **Mappings** section.



6. To provision the **Users** attribute mapping, perform the following steps:
 - Ensure that the **Provision Azure Active Directory Users** option is enabled. Click to select it.
 - On the **Attribute Mapping** page, the existing mapping properties are displayed. To add more mapping properties, click **Add New Mappings**. To edit existing properties, select the **Show Advanced Options** check box and click **Edit attribute list for customappsso**.
 - Refer the user attribute mappings below:

Note: Create the SCIM schema in enterprise application. While creating the SCIM schema, you can set the attribute precedence ofPrimaryEmailAddressandUsernameas 1 or 2, as required. For example, if you set the attribute precedence ofPrimaryEmailAddressas 1, then the attribute precedence ofUsernameis consequently set as 2. If you set the attribute precedence ofUsernameas 1, then the attribute precedence ofPrimaryEmailAddressis consequently set as 2.

For more information, refer to [Creating schema in enterprise application](#).

AD ATTRIBUTE	ARCTERA SCIM ATTRIBUTES	ARCTERA UNIFIED PLATFORM SOURCE ATTRIBUTES	EXAMPLE DATA
	/ MATCHING PRECEDENCE		
User.Mail	emails\[type eq "work"].value, IsPrimary=true	PrimaryEmailAddress	jsmith@organization1.com
	/ 1		
Append(\[extensionAttribute1] + @organization1.com)	userName	UserName	abc1abc@organization1.com
	/ 2		
givenName	name.givenName	FirstName	John
Surname	name.familyName	LastName	Smith
displayName	displayName	DisplayName	John Smith
accountEnabled	active	IsArchive	TRUE
proxyAddresses	emails\[type eq "work"].value, IsPrimary=false	EmailAliases	"smtp:user1@organization1.mail.or
			"smtp:user1_alias@organization1.C

7. To provision **Groups** , perform the following steps:

- Ensure that the **Provision Azure Active Directory Groups** option is enabled. Click to select it.
- On the **Attribute Mapping** page, the existing mapping properties are displayed. To add more mapping properties, click **Add New Mappings**. To edit existing properties, select the **Show Advanced Options** check box and click **Edit attribute list for customappsso**.

- Refer the group attribute mappings below:

Note: UseDisplayNameas Primary Mapping attribute.

GROUP ATTRIBUTE	APP ATTRIBUTE NAME	IS CUSTOM ATTRIBUTE
displayName	displayName	No
objectId	externalId	No
members	members	No
description	urn:ietf:params:scim:schemas:extension:arctera:2.0:Group:description	Yes
Mail	urn:ietf:params:scim:schemas:extension:arctera:2.0:Group:mail	Yes
securityEnabled	urn:ietf:params:scim:schemas:extension:arctera:2.0:Group:securityEnabled	Yes
mailEnabled	urn:ietf:params:scim:schemas:extension:arctera:2.0:Group:mailEnabled	Yes

- After all of the required mappings are configured, select **Save**
- After successful configuration, generate a token from Management Console.
- Click **Generate**
- Copy the generated token, and click **OK**
- Click **Save**
- Enter the copied token in the Secret field in the Azure enterprise application.
- Click **Test connection** to complete the configuration.

If the testing is successful, configuration is considered as complete. If the testing is unsuccessful, contact the support team.

About Import Collector

As an administrator, you can create and enable the Data Uploading archive collector in Arctera Management Console.

The data import collector can collect files with ZIP, PDF, DOC, DOCX, PPT, PPTX, XLS, XLSX, CSV, PST, EML, MSG, and DAT extensions. You can bundle files with these extensions into a ZIP file for importing.

Configuring an Import collector

You must have a *Customer Administrator* role to configure an Import collector.

To configure an Import collector:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.

Note: The **Archive Collectors** node appears in the left navigation pane, only when either of the following secondary services is selected:

- When the **Using Microsoft Exchange Online** check box is selected on the **User Management** page.
- When the **Bloomberg Archiving** check box is selected on the **Customer Details** section of the **Customer Service** tab.

2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Alternatively, in the **Select Type** drop-down, select **File Sharing**. The corresponding collector cards are displayed.

3. Select the **Import** card and click **Configure**
4. On the **Add Importer** tab, specify the following:

NAME	PROVIDE A UNIQUE NAME FOR THIS FILE IMPORT COLLECTOR.
Description	Provide appropriate description to easily identify the file import collector.

5. Click **Save** The **File Import** archive collector appears on the **Archive collectors** page.

Note: If the **File Import** archive collector is no more required, select this collector on the **Archive Collectors** page. Click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Delete**. The application prompts you to confirm that you want to perform the operation. Click **Yes**.

About Arctera Capture Services Archiving

The existing Arctera Capture customers can now use Arctera Unified Platform to enable Arctera Capture primary and secondary services, and configure archive collectors accordingly.

The customers who are enabled for only the Arctera Capture primary service get lesser administration options when they login to the Arctera Management Console.

- Under Account Management, they can create new users (who will be Administrators by default) and update the administrator contact details. These customers do not require Journaling Address.

While adding the customer account, on the Accounts > Add Account page, the Admin check box is available but not selected by default,. If you are creating the administrator account, select it manually.

- These administrators can do the following operations:
 - Configure archive collectors (importers) for the selected/enabled Capture secondary services under Archive Collectors.
 - Manage policies for Trusted Networks, Password Policy, and Authentication Management under Policy Management.

You can configure the following Arctera Capture Secondary Services if you have subscribed for these services (purchased a user license).

Microsoft Teams via Export API \ Microsoft Teams (Audio Video) \ Exchange Mailbox Graph \ Microsoft Teams via Webhooks \ Slack Arctera eDiscovery \ Bloomberg \ IceChat \ Twitter \ OneDrive for Business \ Box \ Google Drive \ Progress ShareFile \ Dropbox Business \ SharePoint \ Amazon \ EML \ Blackberry \ Viva Engage \ UBS \ XSLT/XML \ EWS \ Pivot \ Text-Delimited \ Crowd Compass \ CellTrust \ Refinitiv \ Symphony \ Workplace from Facebook \ Salesforce Chatter \ Chatter Cipher Cloud \ FXConnect \ XIP \ Yieldbroker \ Webpage Capture \ Redtail Speak \ ServiceNow \ RingCentral \ Zoom Meetings \ Zoom Meetings via Archiving API \ Cisco Webex Teams \ YouTube \ Cloud9 \ Verba \ LeapXpert \ LSEG Messenger

Enabling Arctera Capture Services for Archiving

On the Arctera Management Console , only the super administrator can view the Customer Service tab. Therefore, to enable the Arctera Capture services for customers, you must possess the super administrator role . Before you enable the Arctera Capture services for a customer, ensure that the

customer is added to the Arctera Unified Platform. See *Creating the archive instance for a customer* in the Arctera Unified Platform Customer Administration Guide.

To enable Arctera Capture Services for Archiving:

1. In the left navigation tab, select **Customer Service>Customers**
2. On the **Customers** page, do any of the following:
 - If the customer is new, click **Add Customer** and specify the required details.

See *Creating the archive instance for a customer* in the Arctera Unified Platform Customer Administration Guide.

Note: The customers who are enabled for the Arctera Capture services only can see lesser Administration options when they login to the Arctera Management Console . Such customers do not require Journaling Address. In addition, while adding the customer account, on the **Accounts>Add Account** page, the **Admin** check box is selected, but remains disabled.

- If the customer already exists, search for and select the customer for whom you want to enable this service.
3. In the **Services** section.

- Under **Primary Services**, select **Capture**.

Note: Unless the **Capture** option is enabled under primary services, you cannot enable the **Capture Secondary Services** secondary service for this customer.

- Under **Capture Secondary Services**, in the **Enabled** column, select the check box next to the service that you want to enable.
4. Click **Save**
 5. To verify if the selected Capture secondary services are enabled for the customer, in Arctera Management Console , login as a Customer Administrator.
 6. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Services**
 7. Ensure that the selected Capture secondary services are selected under the **Secondary Services** section.

Note: You cannot disable or enable this service from this page. To disable this service, select **Customer Service > Customers**. Select the customer and clear the check box of the selected Capture secondary services in the **Enabled** column.

Configuring Capture Services for Archiving

You must have a Customer Administrator role to configure Capture services synchronization.

To configure Capture Services for Archiving:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**. The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding a collector for the first time, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Hover over the collector card that you want to configure.

You will be able to select the collector card if the customer has purchased the software license for this service. If the customer has not purchased the software license for this service, after hover over, the card flips and informs that the software license is required to add a collector.

4. Select the collector that you want to configure, and click **Configure**. The **Add Importer** dialog box appears.
5. Enter a unique name and description for the archive collector (importer), and click **Next**.

The application redirects you to the Arctera Capture portal. On the Arctera Capture portal, when you attempt to configure the archive collector of every secondary service for the first time, a software license agreement appears. After that, when you add another archive collector of the same secondary service, the application does not show the software license agreement. The sample software license agreement image is shown below.

6. Scroll down to read the software license agreement carefully and accept the agreement to proceed to the configuration wizard for this archive collector (importer).

Note: The configuration wizard fields vary with the archive collector (importer) you have selected.

7. Provide the configuration details in the configuration wizard.

Note: Refer to [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#) to understand configuration fields of corresponding archive collectors (importers) and complete the configuration steps.

After successful configuration, the archive collector appears in the Arctera Management Console.

8. On the Arctera Management Console , select **Archive Collectors**

The application displays the successfully configured archive collector of the selected Capture service.

9. To update the configuration of selected Capture specific archive collector, click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Manage**

The application navigates you to the configuration wizard. Modify the details and save the configuration.

10. To delete the selected Capture specific archive collector, click the kebab icon (three vertical dots) on the archive collector card, and click **Delete**

About Microsoft Teams (Audio Video) Archiving

You can view and configure Microsoft Teams audio-video archiving collector only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Microsoft Teams (Audio Video) service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Microsoft Teams (Audio Video) archiving collectors

To configure Microsoft Teams (Audio Video) archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option

appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Microsoft Teams (Audio Video)** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
6. Click **Next**

The application creates the Microsoft Teams (Audio Video) collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Audio-Video Archiving

You can view and configure audio-video archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Audio-Video service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring audio-video archiving collectors

To configure audio-video archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Audio-Video** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Format Type** drop-down, select the required audio-video collection type. Currently, you can select format type from the following available options:

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
Zoom	150
Teams	155
Webex Teams	151
Vodafone	157
IPC	158
Cisco	159
Avaya	160
Audio File	153
Video File	154

If you do not select any of the available options, by default the format type ID 156 is applied.

- In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
- Click **Next**

The application creates the Audio-Video collector.

- To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Audio-Video Archiving using NTR-X Collectors

You can view and configure audio-video archiving by using the NTR-X collector only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Audio-Video service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring audio-video archiving using NTR-X collectors

To configure audio-video archiving by using the NTR-X collector:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
- Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **NTR-X** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Format Type** drop-down, select the required format type. Currently, you can select format type from the following available options:

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
Audio-Video	156
IPC	158

6. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
7. Click **Next**

The application navigates you to the *Configuration Wizard* for further configuration.

8. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).
 - If you do not select any of the available options, by default the **Audio-Video** format type is applied.
 - If you select the **Audio-Video** format type, it appears as below.
 - If you select the **IPC** format type, it appears as below.

About Dubber Speik SMS Archiving

You can view and configure Dubber Speik SMS archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Dubber Speik SMS service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Dubber Speik SMS archiving collectors

To configure a Dubber Speik SMS archive collector:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Dubber Speik SMS** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
6. Click **Next**

The application creates the Dubber Speik SMS collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Dubber Speik Recordings Archiving

You can view and configure Dubber Speik Recordings archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Dubber Speik Recordings service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Dubber Speik Recordings archive collectors

To configure a Dubber Speik Recordings archive collector:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Dubber Speik Recordings** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Format Type** drop-down, select the required recording format type. Currently, you can select format type from the following available options:

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
Zoom	150
MS Teams	155
Mobilephone	Not Applicable
Webex Teams	151

The collector card's name and icon vary depending on the selected format type. When you select *Zoom* , *MS Teams* , or *Webex Teams* as format types, the collector card exhibits the relevant name and icon. For instance, after selecting the format type as Zoom, the collector card displays the name as *Zoom Meetings* and showcases the *Zoom* icon, as shown in the sample image below:

However, when you select *Mobilephone* as format type or when you do not select any of the available options, the collector card displays the name as *Dubber Speik Recordings* and showcases the *Dubber Speik Recording* icon.

6. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
7. Click **Next**

The application creates the Dubber Speik Recording collector.

8. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Text-Delimited Archiving

You can view and configure Text-Delimited archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Text-Delimited service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Text-Delimited archiving collectors

To configure Text-Delimited archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**. The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Text-Delimited** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.

In the **Format Type** drop-down, select the required Text-Delimited collection type. Currently, you can select format type from the following available options:

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
SMS	109
WhatsApp	110
Twitter (EML)	135
ZoomChat (EML)	137
Carbon	181
ENMACC Energy	182
Legato Chat	183
LiquidNet	184
Markets Manager	185
Saphyre	186
Skytel-Pager	187
Social	188

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
Web CHAT	189
WeChat	190

If you do not select any of the available options, by default the format type ID 156 is applied.

5. Click **Next**

The application creates the Text-Delimited collector.

6. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About XSLT-XML Archiving

You can view and configure XSLT-XML archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the XSLT-XML service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring XSLT-XML archiving collectors

To configure XSLT-XML archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**. The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **XSLT-XML** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.

In the **Format Type** drop-down, select the required XSLT-XML collection type. Currently, you can select format type from the following available options:

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
UBS	104

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
Pivot	107
SMS	109
WhatsApp	110
CellTrust	114
Social	188
WeChat	190
Facetime	192
LinkedIn Audit	193
Merrill-DataSite	194
Trade Web	195

If you do not select any of the available options, by default the format type ID 156 is applied.

5. Click **Next**

The application creates the XSLT-XML collector.

6. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About JSON Archiving

You can view and configure JSON archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the JSON service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring JSON archiving collectors

To configure JSON archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**.

The **Archive Collector** page appears.

2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **JSON** card, and click **Configure**.
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Format Type** drop-down, select the required JSON collection type. Currently, you can select format type from the following available options:

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
Workplace from Facebook	117
Sharepoint (EML)	133

If you do not select any of the available options, by default the format type ID 156 is applied.

6. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
7. Click **Next**.

The application creates the JSON collector.

8. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About EML Archiving

You can view and configure EML archiving collectors only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the EML service under Capture Secondary services.

More Information

[Configuring EML archiving collectors](#)

Configuring EML archiving collectors

To configure EML archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.

2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **EML** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Format Type** drop-down, select the required collection type. Currently, you can select format type from the following available options:

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
EML	101
WeChat	190
Taskize	197

If you do not select any of the available options, by default the format type ID 156 is applied.

6. Click **Next**

The application creates the EML collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About iMessage Archiving

You can view and configure iMessage archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the iMessage service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring iMessage archiving collectors

To configure iMessage archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **iMessage** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
6. Click **Next**

The application creates the iMessage collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About LinkedIn Archiving

You can view and configure LinkedIn archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the LinkedIn service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring LinkedIn archiving collectors

To configure LinkedIn archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **LinkedIn** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.
5. Click **Next**

The application creates the LinkedIn collector.

6. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Signal Archiving

You can view and configure Signal archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Signal service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Signal archiving collectors

To configure Signal archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Signal** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.
5. Click **Next**

The application creates the Signal collector.

6. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Verint Archiving

You can view and configure Verint archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Verint service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Verint archiving collectors

To configure Verint archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Verint** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.
5. Click **Next**

The application creates the Verint collector.

6. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About WeChat Archiving

You can view and configure WeChat archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the WeChat service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring WeChat archiving collectors

To configure WeChat archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **WeChat** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.
5. Click **Next**

The application creates the WeChat collector.

6. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About WhatsApp Archiving

You can view and configure WhatsApp archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the WhatsApp service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring WhatsApp archiving collectors

To configure WhatsApp archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **WhatsApp** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.
5. Click **Next**

The application creates the WhatsApp collector.

6. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Cloud9 Archiving

You can view and configure Cloud9 archiving collector only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Cloud9 service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Cloud9 archiving collectors

To configure Cloud9 archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Cloud9** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
6. Click **Next**

The application creates the Cloud9 collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Verba Archiving

You can view and configure Verba archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Verba service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Verba archiving collectors

To configure Verba archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Verba** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Format Type** drop-down, select the required Verba collection type. Currently, you can select format type from the following available options:

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
Zoom	150
Teams Audio and Video	155
Cisco	159

If you do not select any of the available options, by default the format type ID 156 is applied.

- In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
- Click **Next**

The application creates the Verba collector.

- To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Progress ShareFile Archiving

You can view and configure Progress ShareFile archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Progress ShareFile service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Progress ShareFile archiving collectors

To configure Progress ShareFile archiving collectors:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**.

The **Archive Collector** page appears.

- Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

- Select the **Progress ShareFile** card, and click **Configure**.
- Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.

5. Click **Next**.

The application creates the Progress ShareFile collector.

6. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About LeapXpert Archiving

You can view and configure LeapXpert archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the LeapXpert service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring LeapXpert archiving collectors

To configure LeapXpert archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**.

The **Archive Collector** page appears.

2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **LeapXpert** card, and click **Configure**.
4. Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Format Type** drop-down, select the required JSON collection type. Currently, you can select format type from the following available options:

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
SMS Collaboration	39
WhatsApp Collaboration	40
iMessage	41
Telegram	49

FORMAT TYPE	FORMAT TYPE ID
Governed	50
WeChat	190
Signal	196

Note: If you do not select any of the available options, the format type ID 48 is applied by default. Format type ID 48 corresponds to LeapXpert.

- In the Configure EV Folder Target drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
- Click **Next**.

The application creates the LeapXpert collector.

- To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About LSEG Messenger Archiving

You can view and configure LSEG Messenger archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the LSEG Messenger service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring LSEG Messenger archiving collectors

To configure LSEG Messenger archiving collectors:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**.

The **Archive Collector** page appears.

- Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

- Select the **LSEG Messenger** card, and click **Configure**.
- Enter a unique name a brief description for the collector.

5. In the Configure EV Folder Target drop-down, select Yes to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select No to restrict it.
6. Click **Next**.

The application creates the LSEG Messenger collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Copilot Archiving

You can view and configure Copilot archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Copilot service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Copilot archiving collectors

To configure Copilot archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors** The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Copilot** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
6. Click **Next**

The application creates the Copilot collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

About Zoom Phone Archiving

You can view and configure Zoom Phone archiving only if you are subscribed to the Capture under Primary Service and then the Zoom Phone service under Capture Secondary services.

Configuring Zoom Phone archiving collectors

To configure Zoom Phone archiving collectors:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Archive Collectors**. The **Archive Collector** page appears.
2. Click **Add collector** to view available collector cards.

Note: At the time of adding the first collector, the Add collector button appears in the middle of the screen. If one or more collectors are already added, the Add collector option appears on the top right-hand corner. If you select the collector that is not supported in Arctera Unified Platform, the Configure button gets disabled. You cannot configure such collectors.

3. Select the **Zoom Phone** card, and click **Configure**
4. Enter a unique name and a brief description for the collector.
5. In the **Configure EV Folder Target** drop-down, select **Yes** to allow configuring targeted EV folder or select **No** to restrict it.
6. Click **Next**

The application creates the Zoom Phone collector.

7. To configure the properties, refer to the [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

Managing Roles and Permissions

This section includes the following topics:

- [Understanding and configuring administration roles](#)
- [Viewing existing roles](#)
- [Modifying the built-in roles](#)
- [Creating custom roles](#)
- [Assigning roles and privileges to user accounts](#)
- [Assigning roles and privileges to Azure Active Directory groups](#)

Understanding and configuring administration roles

As a system administrator, you can manage other administration roles and assign permissions to these roles to define their functions in the Management Console. The Role Management page, lets you do the following:

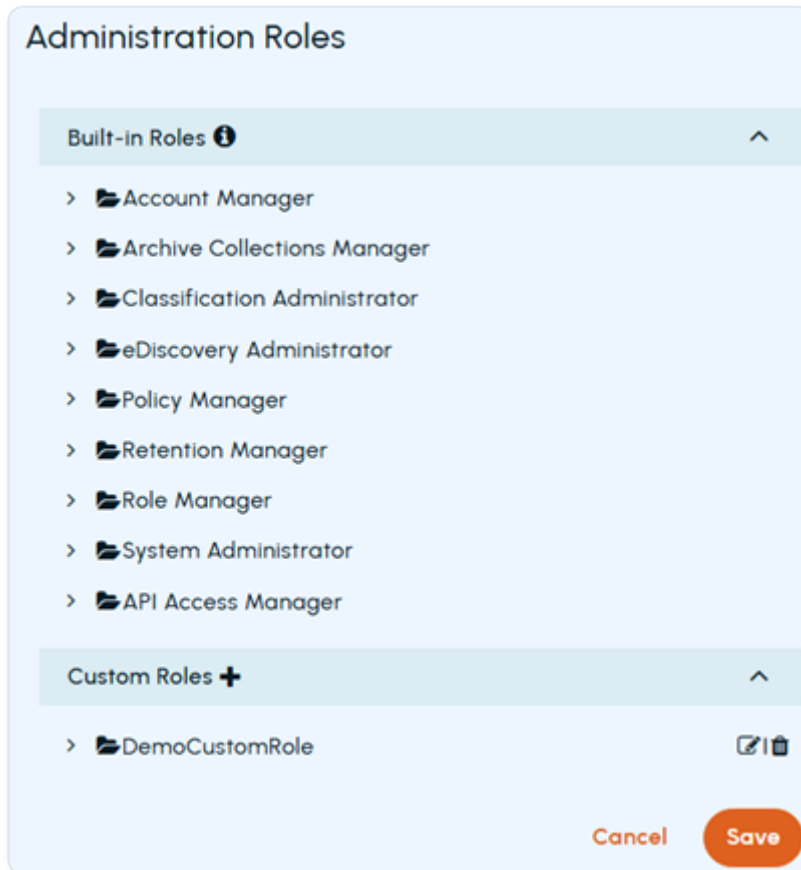
- View all built-in and custom roles currently in use. See [Viewing existing roles](#).
- Modify built-in roles. See [Modifying the built-in roles](#).
- Create new customized roles with the required permissions. See [Creating custom roles](#).
- Assign the built-in or custom roles, and privileges to individual user accounts. See [Assigning roles and privileges to user accounts](#).
- Assign the built-in or custom roles, and privileges to Active Directory groups. See [Assigning roles and privileges to Azure Active Directory groups](#).
- View the Activity Log for changes to built-in and custom roles. See [Viewing the Activity Log](#).

The log captures added or removed roles and permissions, the user who made the changes, the affected users, and the date and time of the modification. The log also records role changes during bulk account import, including the roles assigned or unassigned, the user who performed the action, and the event date and time.

Viewing existing roles

To view existing roles:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Role Management>Administration roles**



2. To view details of built-in roles, expand the Built-in Roles section. Click the required role to expand. The associated permissions are shown as selected.
3. To view details of customized roles, expand the Custom Roles section. Click the required role to expand. The associated permissions are shown as selected.

Modifying the built-in roles

Built-in roles are predefined roles with a default set of permissions. The following built-in roles and their permissions are available.

- Account manager — manages users, aliases, settings, and passwords
- Role manager — configures administrator roles and permissions for archive accounts
- Policy manager — specifies archiving options and settings
- Retention manager — specifies archive retention policies and settings
- Continuity manager — manages email continuity feature (only available if your organization subscribes to the email continuity service)
- Arctera eDiscovery Administrator — configures and manages Arctera eDiscovery usage

- System administrator — oversees all Arctera Personal Archive accounts including other administrators
- Archive collections manager — configures and manages archiving from third-party content sources

Note: You can modify privileges for most roles to meet organizational requirements. You cannot edit the permissions for the System administrator roles. You can only edit Share Export, Download Export, and Privilege Delete permissions for the Arctera eDiscovery Administrator role.

To modify a built-in role:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Role Management > Administration Roles**
2. Expand the **Built-in Roles** section and identify the role you want to modify.
3. Expand the role to view associated permissions.
4. Select or clear the check boxes next to the permissions you want to add or remove for the selected role.

Note: You cannot remove the Archive Overview permission.

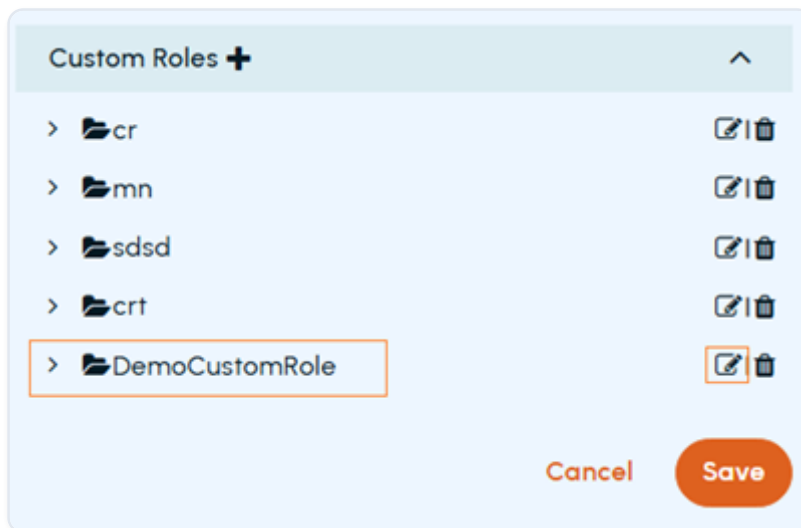
5. Click **Save**

Creating custom roles

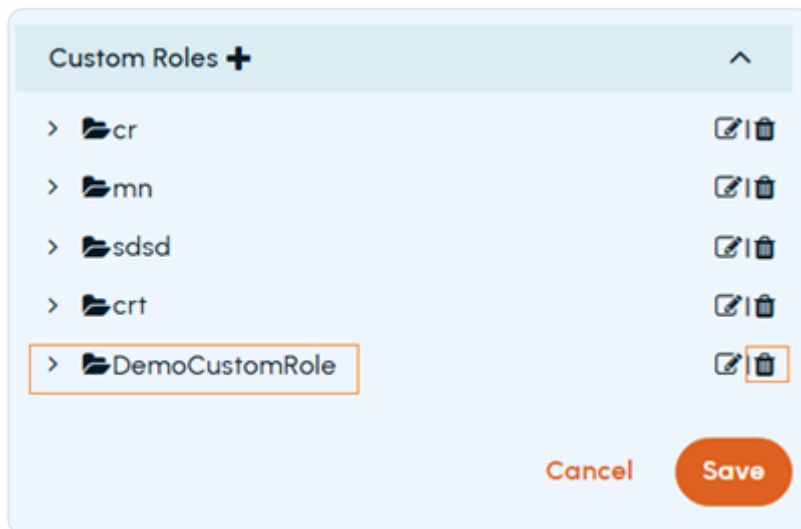
Custom roles are user-defined roles that provide a customizable set of permissions when built-in roles do not meet specific requirements. You can create custom roles and configure their permissions as needed. You can also update, rename, or delete them.

To create a custom role:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Role Management > Administration Roles**
2. In the **Custom Roles** section, click the plus icon.
3. In the blank text box, enter a unique name for this role, and click **Save**
4. To rename the custom role, click the **Edit** icon in the corresponding row.

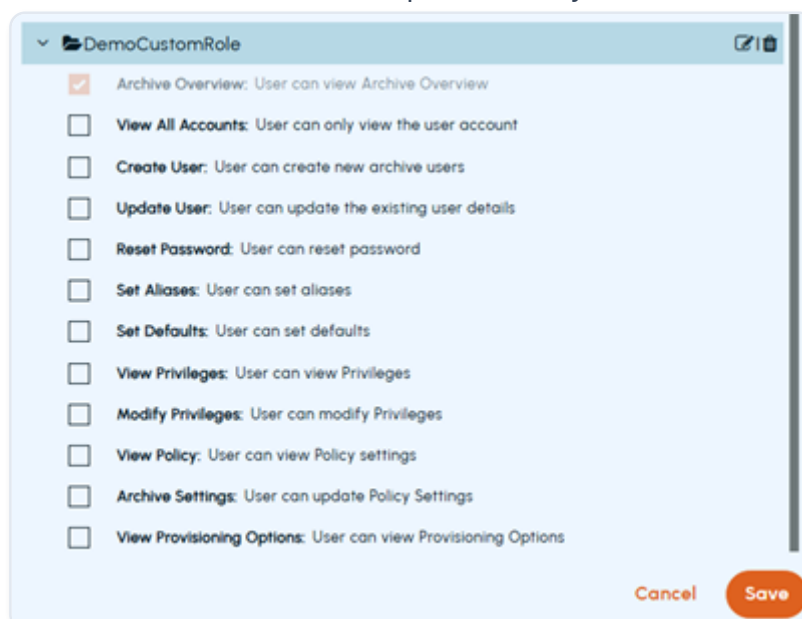


5. To delete the custom role, click the **Delete** icon in the corresponding row.



6. To configure permissions to the custom role, expand the custom role to view available permissions. Select the check box next to the permissions you want to add for this custom role,

and click **Save**



Assigning roles and privileges to user accounts

The Management Console has the following primary roles:

- **Account:** This role is assigned to user accounts by default when they are created in the Management Console. You can assign built-in or custom roles to these user accounts as needed. If a reviewer or administrator needs to be switched to an individual user account, you can change their existing Reviewer or Administrator role to the user account.
- **Reviewer:** This role is assigned to a user account to grant the following privileges to the user to access Arctera eDiscovery and manage cases. These privileges apply at the case level.
 - **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status.
 - **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status.
 - **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case.
 - **Review Email:** Assign review status to email.
 - **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports.
 - **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegal.
 - **Department Reviewers:** User will act like an eDiscovery reviewer, but their purview will be restricted to assigned departments.

See [Assigning the reviewer role and privileges to an archive account](#). and See [Importing multiple user accounts for monitoring](#).

- **Administrator:** This role provides administration-level permissions and privileges to user accounts. The available built-in and custom roles can be assigned to the user account.

See [Assigning the administrator roles and privileges to a user account](#).

Assigning the reviewer role and privileges to an archive account

If your organization subscribes to Arctera eDiscovery and Arctera Personal Archive, you can assign the reviewer role to an archive account. The reviewer role includes an additional functionality of searching and reviewing an organization's data to respond to any discovery or investigation request.

To assign the reviewer role and privileges to a user account:

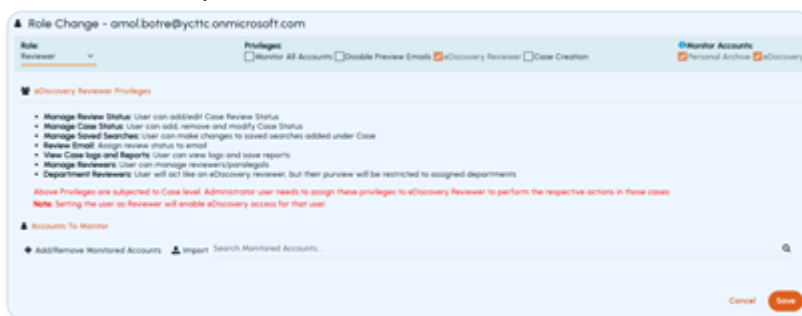
1. In the left navigation pane, select **Role Management>Assign Accounts**
2. Search for the user account to which you want to assign the reviewer role.

The **Role Change** page appears. To search for the required user account, you can use any of the following methods. The filtered options appears automatically.

- **Quick search:** Enter the user name or email of the user account in the search field, and click the **Search** icon.
- **Advanced search:** In the corresponding fields, enter the email, name, or role, and click **Apply**.
- **Role-based search:** Select a role in the **Roles** section.

3. Select the user account.

4. In the **Role** drop-down, select **Reviewer**



5. The **Privilege** field displays the following options:

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS	SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED USER ACCOUNT TO VIEW THE ARCHIVED MESSAGES OF ALL OTHER ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. IF YOU SELECT THIS OPTION, YOU DO NOT NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION. CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED USER ACCOUNT TO VIEW THE ARCHIVED MESSAGES OF SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. UPON CLEARING THIS OPTION, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION APPEARS. CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS AND SELECT THE USER ACCOUNTS THAT YOU WANT REVIEWERS TO MONITOR. CLICK SAVE IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING
eDiscovery Reviewer	This option is selected by default. When you define a user as a reviewer, this user gets access to the Arctera eDiscovery application. The eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges section lists all the privileges for your reference. These privileges vary with the case levels. As an administrator, you can assign these privileges to the eDiscovery

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS	SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED USER ACCOUNT TO VIEW THE
	ARCHIVED MESSAGES OF ALL OTHER ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. IF YOU SELECT THIS
	OPTION, YOU DO NOT NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.
	CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED USER ACCOUNT TO VIEW THE
	ARCHIVED MESSAGES OF SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS.
	UPON CLEARING THIS OPTION, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION APPEARS. CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS AND SELECT THE USER
	ACCOUNTS THAT YOU WANT REVIEWERS TO MONITOR. CLICK SAVE
	IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING
	Reviewers to perform various actions while reviewing the cases.
Disable Preview Emails	Select this option to prevent the reviewer from
	previewing emails from other archive accounts.
Case Creation	Select this option to allow the reviewer to create cases in
	Arctera eDiscovery.

6. To set an expiry date for a reviewer's access to monitored accounts, clear the check box under **Never Expires**, then click the **Calendar** icon in the **Expiration** column, and select the desired date.
7. If a previously added monitored account is no longer required, click the **Delete** icon in its row.
8. Click **Save**

Importing multiple user accounts for monitoring

You can simultaneously assign multiple user accounts to the reviewer by importing the .CSV file. The .CSV file is not directly available. Instead, you can download the sample .XLS file and save it as .CSV. The sample .XLS file is available when you click Import under the Accounts to Monitor section.

To assign multiple user accounts for monitoring:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Role Management>Assign Accounts**
2. Search for the user account to which you want to assign the reviewer role.

The **Role Change** page appears. To search for the required user account, you can use any of the following methods. The filtered options appears automatically.

- **Quick search:** Enter the user name or email of the user account in the search field, and click the **Search** icon.
- **Advanced search:** In the corresponding fields, enter the email, name, or role, and click **Apply**.
- **Role-based search:** Select a role in the **Roles** section.

3. Select a reviewer account for whom you want to import multiple accounts for monitoring.
4. Under **Accounts to Monitor**, click ****Import****. The **Import Monitor Accounts** window appears. Before you import the file, understand and perform the following steps.
5. Click the sample .XLS file to download the sample file. Save this file as .CSV to provide email addresses of archive accounts you want to assign to reviewers for monitoring purpose.
6. Retain (do not delete) the **Primary Email Address** column heading in the .CSV file.
7. Delete all the text (including these instructions) below the **Primary Email Address** column heading.
8. Use only primary email addresses of the archive accounts.

9. After the .CSV file (in which you have mentioned the primary email addresses of the archive accounts that you want to assign in bulk for monitoring) is ready and saved, click **Browse** and select it.
10. Click **Import** in the **Import Monitor Accounts** window.
11. On the **Role Change** page, click **Save**

Assigning the administrator roles and privileges to a user account

By default, all archive accounts that you create in Management Console are automatically assigned the *Accounts* role. If required, you can assign the built-in or custom roles you created to a user account.

To assign the administrator roles to a user account:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Role Management>Assign Accounts**
2. Search for the user account to which you want to assign the administrator role.

The **Role Change** page appears. To search for the required user account, you can use any of the following methods. The filtered options appears automatically.

- **Quick search:** Enter the user name or email of the user account in the search field, and click the **Search** icon.
- **Advanced search:** In the corresponding fields, enter the email, name, or role, and click **Apply**.
- **Role-based search:** Select a role in the **Roles** section. User accounts with that role will be filtered.

3. In the **Role** drop-down, select **Administrator**

Role Change - amol.b@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com

Role: Administrator

Privileges: ☒ Monitor All Accounts

Monitor Accounts: ☒ Personal Archive ☒ eDiscovery

Built-in Roles

- ☒ Account Manager
- ☒ Archive Collections Manager
- ☒ Classification Administrator
- ☐ eDiscovery Administrator
- ☐ Policy Manager
- ☐ Retention Manager
- ☐ Role Manager
- ☐ System Administrator
- ☐ API Access Manager

Custom Roles

- ☒ DemoCustomRole

Cancel Save

4. In the **Privilege** field, select the **Monitor All Accounts** check box.

Administrators can control the visibility of monitored accounts in Arctera eDiscovery and Arctera Personal Archive. The following options are selected by default.

PERSONAL ARCHIVE	THIS OPTION IS DISPLAYED IF YOUR ORGANIZATION
	HAS SUBSCRIBED TO ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE SERVICE.
	SELECT THIS OPTION IF YOU WANT THE USER ACCOUNT TO MONITOR ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS IN ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE.
	CLEAR THIS OPTION IF YOU DO NOT WANT THE USER ACCOUNT TO MONITOR ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS IN
	ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE.
eDiscovery	This option is displayed if your organization
	has subscribed to Arctera eDiscovery service.

PERSONAL ARCHIVE	THIS OPTION IS DISPLAYED IF YOUR ORGANIZATION
	HAS SUBSCRIBED TO ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE SERVICE.
	SELECT THIS OPTION IF YOU WANT THE USER ACCOUNT TO MONITOR ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS IN ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE.
	CLEAR THIS OPTION IF YOU DO NOT WANT THE USER ACCOUNT TO MONITOR ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS IN
	ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE.
	Select this option if you want the user account to monitor archive accounts in Arctera eDiscovery.
	Clear this option if you do not want the user account to monitor archive accounts in
	Arctera eDiscovery.

5. Select one or more required roles from **Built-in** and **Custom** roles.

6. Click **Save**

Assigning roles and privileges to Azure Active Directory groups

The Management Console supports synchronizing Azure Active Directory groups through SCIM or Active Directory Sync. This capability allows administrators to centrally manage access to Active Directory groups.

The Assign Active Directory Groups feature enables administrators to assign roles and privileges to Active Directory groups directly from the Management Console. This reduces the need to manage reviewer roles on individual users-basis.

Before you use this feature, note the following facts:

- By default, all synchronized Active Directory groups are assigned the None role. At this stage, effective role and privileges of each member will be either their individual user role or other Active Directory groups the user belongs to.
- When administrators assign the Reviewer role at the Active Directory group level, all direct members of the Active Directory group automatically inherit the assigned reviewer privileges. A maximum of 100 members (user accounts) from a single Active Directory group can be assigned case-level reviewer privileges.

Only the direct group members can be assigned the Reviewer role. The nested groups and their members cannot be assigned the Reviewer role.

See [Assigning the reviewer role and privileges to Active Directory groups](#).

- When administrators assign the Administrator role at the Active Directory group level, all direct members of the Active Directory group automatically inherit the assigned administrator privileges.

Only the direct group members can be assigned the Administrator role. The nested groups and their members cannot be assigned the Administrator role.

See [Assigning the administrator roles and privileges to Active Directory groups](#).

- The administrator can add, remove, and import monitored accounts while assigning roles and privileges to the Active Directory group.
- The Expiry date for monitored accounts will be highest date assigned from Individual user and all Active Directory groups.
- Active Directory groups assigned with the Reviewer role can be selected as reviewers in Arctera eDiscovery. However, the Active Directory group role cannot be changed using Arctera eDiscovery.
- Administrators can assign case-level reviewer privileges to an Active Directory group. All direct members of the Active Directory group automatically inherit the assigned reviewer privileges for the selected case. When an Active Directory group is added as a case reviewer, all its members are added as reviewers for the case.
- If an Active Directory group is deleted during synchronization, members of that Active Directory group no longer retain the roles and privileges that were assigned to them through that Active Directory group. In this scenario, each member's effective role and privileges will be either their individual user role or other Active Directory groups the user belongs to.

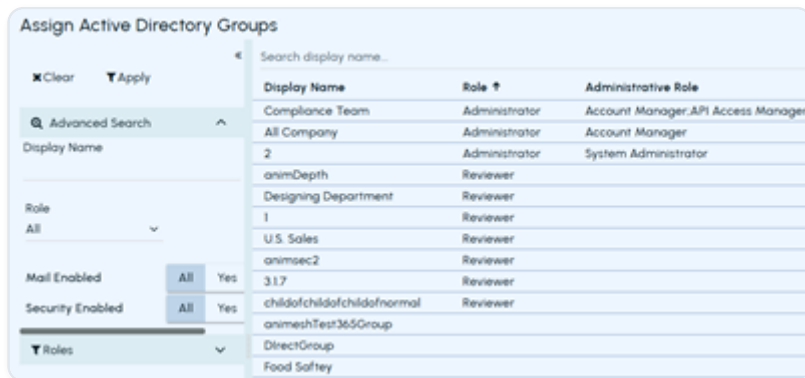
- If an Active Directory group with case-level reviewer privileges is removed, the expiry date for its members is set to the group removal date. The members still remain listed as case reviewers. However, when such members log in to Arctera eDiscovery with an expired reviewer role, the associated cases are not displayed to them.

Assigning the reviewer role and privileges to Active Directory groups

To assign the reviewer role and privileges to the Active Directory group:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Role Management>Assign Active Directory group**

The application displays a list of available Active Directory groups synchronized from identity sources such as SCIM and Microsoft 365. To view the members of a group, click the **Download** icon next to the required group name. The downloaded file contains the names of all users who are members of the selected Active Directory group.



2. Search for the Active Directory group to which you want to assign the reviewer role.

The **Role Change** page appears. To search for the required Active Directory group, you can use any of the following methods. The filtered options appear automatically.

- **Quick search:** Enter the user name or email of the group in the search field, and click the **Search** icon.
- **Advanced search:** In the corresponding fields, enter the email, name, or role, and click **Apply**.
- **Role-based search:** Select a role in the **Roles** section.

3. Select the Active Directory group.

Note: If the selected Active Directory group has no assigned roles, the **Role** drop-down on the **Role Change** page displays **None** by default.

4. In the **Role** drop-down, select **Reviewer**

Role Change - amol.botre@lyctt.onmicrosoft.com

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable Preview Emails ☒ eDiscovery Reviewer ☐ Case Creation

☒ Monitor Accounts ☒ Personal Archives ☒ eDiscovery

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/privileges
- **Department Reviews:** User will act like an eDiscovery reviewer, but their purview will be restricted to assigned departments

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to eDiscovery Reviewer to perform the respective actions in these cases

Note: Setting the user as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for that user.

Accounts To Monitor

• Add/Remove Monitored Accounts • Import Search Monitored Accounts

Cancel Save

When you view the list, Active Directory groups are displayed with their assigned roles. The **Role** column displays **Reviewer** when the reviewer role is assigned; otherwise, it is blank. Refer to the sample image below.

Search display name...		
Display Name	Role ↑	Administrative Role
Compliance Team	Administrator	Account Manager,API Access Manager;
All Company	Administrator	Account Manager
2	Administrator	System Administrator
animDepth	Reviewer	
Designing Department	Reviewer	
1	Reviewer	
U.S. Sales	Reviewer	
animsec2	Reviewer	
3.1.7	Reviewer	
childofchildofchildofnormal	Reviewer	
animeshTest365Group		
DirectGroup		
Food Safety		

5. The **Privilege** field displays the following options:

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co...aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro...	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D...Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso...	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On_...	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled_...	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co...aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro...	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D...Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso...	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On_...	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled_...	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co...aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro...	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D...Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso...	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On_...	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled_...	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro..Abhishek	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D..Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso..Adele	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi..Admin	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm..Admin	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled...Admin	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro..Abhishek	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D..Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso..Adele	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi..Admin	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm..Admin	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled...Admin	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro...	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D...Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso...	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On_...	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled_...	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro..Abhishek	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D..Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso..Adele	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...Admin	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...Admin	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled...Admin	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro...	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D...Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso...	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled_...	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro...	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D...Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso...	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled_...	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co...aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro...	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D...Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso...	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled_...	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro...	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D...Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso...	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled_...	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro..Abhishek	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D..Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso..Adele	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi..Admin	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm..Admin	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled...Admin	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro..Abhishek	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D..Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso..Adele		VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...admin		code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...admin		code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi..Admin		Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm..Admin		code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled...Admin		code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co...aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro...	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D...Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso...	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On_...	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi...	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled_...	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro..Abhishek	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D..Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso..Adele	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi..Admin	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm..Admin	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled...Admin	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro..Abhishek	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D..Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso..Adele	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi..Admin	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm...Admin	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled...Admin	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

MONITOR ALL ACCOUNTS

Role Change - DirectGroup

Role: Reviewer

Privileges: ☐ Monitor All Accounts ☐ Disable

eDiscovery Reviewer Privileges

- **Manage Review Status:** User can add/edit Case Review Status
- **Manage Case Status:** User can add, remove and modify Case Status
- **Manage Saved Searches:** User can make changes to saved searches added under Case
- **Review Email:** Assign review status to email
- **View Case logs and Reports:** User can view logs and save reports
- **Manage Reviewers:** User can manage reviewers/paralegals

Above Privileges are subjected to Case level. Administrator user needs to assign these privileges to the group.

Note: Setting the group as Reviewer will enable eDiscovery access for all members of that group.

Accounts To Monitor

+ Add/Remove Monitored Accounts Import Search Monitored Accounts...

Add/Remove Accounts

Search...

	Email Address ↑	First Name	Last Name
☐	aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.co..aa		aa
☒	abhishek@ycttc.onmicro..Abhishek	Abhishek	Ghule
☐	addison-Disabled_On_D..Jovany		Shakira
☒	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicroso..Adele	Adele	VanceOne
☒	admin976@ycttc.onmicr...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976-Disabled_On...admin	admin	code
☐	admin976zz@ycttc.onmi..Admin	Admin	Code2
☐	admin976zzl@ycttc.onm..Admin	Admin	code2
☐	admin976zzl-Disabled...Admin	Admin	code2

Save

SELECT THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR ALL ARCHIVE

ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS SELECTED, THERE IS NO NEED TO COMPLETE THE STEPS IN THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION.

CLEAR THIS OPTION TO ALLOW THE SELECTED ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP TO VIEW ARCHIVED MESSAGES FOR

SPECIFIC ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS. WHEN THIS OPTION IS NOT SELECTED, THE ACCOUNTS TO MONITOR SECTION IS

DISPLAYED, ALLOWING ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS AND ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUPS TO BE ADDED, REMOVED, AND

IMPORTED.

CLICK ADD/REMOVE MONITORED ACCOUNTS TO ADD NEW ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING.

IF YOU WANT TO IMPORT MONITORED ACCOUNTS, CLICK IMPORT . SEE IMPORTING MULTIPLE USER ACCOUNTS FOR MONITORING

6. On the **Role Change** page, click **Save**. After you save the changes made to the selected Active Directory group, they are updated in the application and can be verified as follows:

- **Application-level changes**

a. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Logs**.

b. On the **Activity Log** page, specify the time period, Detail Substring, or a user name as available.

c. From the **Event** drop-down list, select Role changed option. click **Search** to view the log as shown in the sample image below.

The screenshot shows the 'Activity Log' interface with the following components:

- Navigation Tabs:** Activity Log (selected), Message Log, Usage Log, Retention Log, Personal Browser Log, eDiscovery Browser Log, Export Logs.
- Search Filters:**
 - From Date:** 07/01/2025
 - To Date:** 04/13/2026
 - Detail Substring:** Detail
 - User / Group:** Name of user or group
 - Event:** Role changed (selected from a dropdown menu)
- Table of Results:**

Timestamp	Modified by User	Modified User / Group	Event
04/10/2026 02:40:00 AM	anim123@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	animeshanand@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Role changed
04/10/2026 01:46:00 AM	anim123@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Compliance Team	Role changed
04/08/2026 10:45:00 PM	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Designing Department	Role changed
04/08/2026 10:39:00 PM	AdeleV@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	abhishek@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Role changed
03/31/2026 11:31:00 PM	anim123@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	sierra.tremblay@sawayn.biz	Role changed
03/31/2026 06:00:00 AM	anim123@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	admin976@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Role changed

- **Account-level changes**

a. In the left navigation pane, select **Role Management >Assign Accounts**. A list of archive accounts appears.

b. Search for the required archive account. Use any of the following methods:

- Expand the **Advanced Search** section, specify the input, and click **Apply**.
- Expand the **Roles** section, click on the required role.
- In the **Search** field, enter the username or email of the archive account and click the **Search** icon.
- Refer to the **Effective Role** and **Role** column values for the required archive account to verify the role changes.

Assign Accounts

Search...

Clear Apply

Advanced Search

Email Address or Alias

Last Name

First Name

Role

All

Email Address	Effective Role	Role	Last Name
aa@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Admin	Admin	aa
abhishek@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Reviewer	Reviewer	Ghule
addison-Disabled_On_Dec 12 2022 11:5AM@hell	Account	Account	Shakina
AdeleV@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Admin	Account	VanceOne
admin976@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Admin	Admin	code
admin976-Disabled_On_Dec 12 2022 12:44AM@hell	Account	Account	code
admin976zz@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Reviewer	Reviewer	Code2
admin976zzl@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Admin	Admin	code2
admin976zzl-Disabled_On_Dec 12 2022 12:55A	Account	Account	code2
admin976zz-Disabled_On_Dec 12 2022 12:48A	Account	Account	Code2
adminAnim@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Reviewer	Reviewer	Anim
AlexW@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Admin	Account	WilberNow
amolbatre@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Account	Account	Batre
anim@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Reviewer	Reviewer	an

- Click the question mark (?) icon (if appears) in the **Effective Role** column to view how the effective role is determined based on Active Directory group membership. The highest role becomes the effective role. The details appear as shown in the sample image below.

Effective Role and Privileges - AdeleV@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com

	Role	Administrative Role	View All Accounts	Add Case
Effective	Reviewer		☒	☒
Account				
AdeleV@ycttc.onmicrosoft.com	Account		☒	☐
Active Directory Groups (3)				
U.S. Sales	Reviewer		☐	☐
animsec2	Reviewer		☒	☒
animDepth	Reviewer		☐	☐

Assigning the administrator roles and privileges to Active Directory groups

By default, all Active Directory groups are automatically assigned the *None* role. If required, you can assign the built-in or custom roles to Active Directory groups.

To assign administrator roles and privileges to Active Directory groups:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Role Management>Assign Active Directory Groups**
- Search for the user account to which you want to assign the administrator role.

The **Role Change** page appears. To search for the required user account, you can use any of the following methods. The filtered options appear automatically.

- Quick search:** Enter the user name or email of the user account in the search field, and click the **Search** icon.
- Advanced search:** In the corresponding fields, enter the email, name, or role, and click **Apply**.
- Role-based search:** Select a role in the **Roles** section. User accounts with that role will be filtered.

3. In the **Role** drop-down, select the **Administrator** role. Then, select the appropriate administrative roles as shown in the sample image below.

4. In the **Privilege** field, select the **Monitor All Accounts** check box.

Administrators can control the visibility of monitored accounts in Arctera eDiscovery and Arctera Personal Archive. The following options are selected by default.

PERSONAL ARCHIVE	THIS OPTION IS DISPLAYED IF YOUR ORGANIZATION
	HAS SUBSCRIBED TO ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE SERVICE.
	SELECT THIS OPTION IF YOU WANT THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP USERS TO MONITOR ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS IN ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE.
	CLEAR THIS OPTION IF YOU DO NOT WANT THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP USERS TO MONITOR ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS IN
	ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE.
eDiscovery	This option is displayed if your organization
	has subscribed to Arctera eDiscovery service.

PERSONAL ARCHIVE	THIS OPTION IS DISPLAYED IF YOUR ORGANIZATION
	HAS SUBSCRIBED TO ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE SERVICE.
	SELECT THIS OPTION IF YOU WANT THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP USERS TO MONITOR ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS IN ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE.
	CLEAR THIS OPTION IF YOU DO NOT WANT THE ACTIVE DIRECTORY GROUP USERS TO MONITOR ARCHIVE ACCOUNTS IN
	ARCTERA PERSONAL ARCHIVE.
	Select this option if you want the Active Directory group users to monitor archive accounts in Arctera eDiscovery.
	Clear this option if you do not want the Active Directory group users to monitor archive accounts in
	Arctera eDiscovery.

5. Select one or more required roles from **Built-in** and **Custom** roles.
6. Click **Save**

Managing Policies

This section includes the following topics:

- [About Policy Management](#)
- [Configuring archive options](#)
- [Enabling and disabling account archiving](#)
- [Configuring the InsightAI feature](#)
- [Configuring an advanced password policy](#)
- [Configuring trusted networks for Arctera Unified Platform access](#)
- [Managing Custom Headers](#)
- [Managing Discard Rules](#)
- [Managing Index Exclusion](#)

About Policy Management

You can perform the following tasks from the Policy Management section:

- Configure various archiving options.
- Enabling or disabling archiving for selected archive accounts.
- Configuring the InsightAI feature
- Configure an advanced policy for passwords.
- Configure trusted networks for Arctera Unified Platform access.

See [Configuring the InsightAI feature](#).

Note: From the Policy Management section the administrators with the required privileges can also configure authentication management for Arctera Unified Platform. See [Configuring the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service](#).

Configuring archive options

Administrator can enable or disable the archive options to configure archiving policies and AI-driven capabilities for the Arctera Unified Platform applications subscribed by a customer.

To configure archive options:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management > Archive Options**
2. Click **Edit** to configure the required features.

Refer to the details in the table below.

ARCHIVE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Manage Your Own Encryption Keys (MYOK)	This option is informational only and cannot be configured through this interface. This configuration is available only during initial provisioning, before any data is stored. See Configuring the Manage Your Own Keys (MYOK) Feature . or contact Arctera support
Email Direction	Specifies which types of emails are archived. By default, all message types are selected. Select the email direction, as needed. • Inbound Emails - Select this option to enable archiving email messages sent to addresses within your domain from external domains. • Outbound Emails - Select this option to enable archiving email messages sent from addresses within your domain to external domains. • Internal Emails - Select this option to enable archiving email messages exchanged between addresses within your domain.
Archiving Actions	Determines whether the Arctera Personal Archive users can send, reply, forward, print, or save messages. • Send, Reply, and Forward - Select this option to allow users to send, reply to, and forward messages in Arctera Personal Archive. • Save - Select this option to allow users to save archived messages to your computer from Arctera

ARCHIVE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	Personal Archive. • Print - Select this option to allow users to print archived messages from Arctera Personal Archive.
Time Zone and Date Format	- Specifies the time zone and date format. • Personal Time Zone - Select the appropriate archiving time zone. • Default Company Time Zone - Select the default time zone for your company. • Date Format - Select the default date format for your company.
Mobile Web Access	Determines which permissions to be enabled for Mobile Web Access users. • Status - Select this option to enable or disable Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission. • Automatically grant Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission for new accounts - Select this option to grant Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission for new archive accounts when you create them manually in Arctera Management Console. Note: This option does not apply to archive accounts that are created through CloudLink or Exchange Online Sync. • Send, Reply and Forward from Personal Archive Mobile Web Access - Select this option to enable the Send , Reply , and Forward options in Personal Archive Mobile Web Access. To use this feature, Arctera Personal Archive administrator requires the Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission. You can set it for the Arctera Personal Archive administrator role. See Editing Personal Archive Mobile Web Access permission for existing archive accounts
Privileged Delete	Determines whether permanent deletion of archived items is enabled for Arctera Personal Archive and Arctera eDiscovery. This option is disabled by default for both

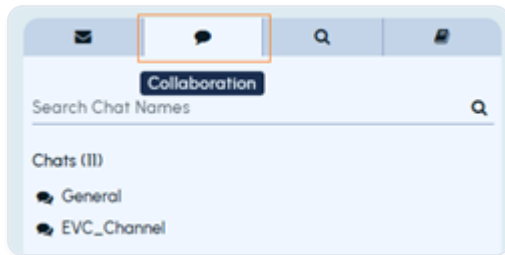
ARCHIVE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	products and must be explicitly enabled by an administrator. When enabled, deleted items are permanently removed from the archive for all users and cannot be restored. Items that are on legal hold or protected by WORM are not deleted. To enable the Privileged Delete permission in eDiscovery: Turn on the eDiscovery option under Policy Management > Archive Options. Enabling this option does not automatically grant delete access to all eDiscovery users. Delete access is role-based and must be granted to an eDiscovery Administrator. To grant the required permission to the role, go to Role Management > Administrator Role > Built-in Roles > eDiscovery Administrator, and then select the Privileged Delete check box. To assign the role to an account, go to Role Management > Assign Accounts, and select the required account. From the Role drop-down list, select Administrator. Expand Built-in Roles, and then select the eDiscovery Administrator check box. To enable the Privileged Delete permission in Personal Archive: Turn on the Personal Archive option under Policy Management > Archive Options. Enabling this option grants permanent delete access to all Personal Archive users. You must acknowledge the warning before enabling the option. Emails deleted from Personal Archive are permanently removed for all users and are no longer searchable by eDiscovery administrators in Arctera eDiscovery. Because deletion is irreversible and affects all users, enable this option only for controlled and governed use. For more information about configuring permissions for built-in roles, see Modifying the built-in roles.

ARCHIVE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
View Delegate Archives Folder Structure	Determines if the ability to view delegate archive folders in Arctera Personal Archive to be enabled or disabled.Note: To use this feature, Folder Sync must be enabled for the account and delegate archives. For delegate archives with Folder Sync enabled, user would be able to see the folder structure on selection in Arctera Personal Archive. If you have over 4,000 synchronized monitored and delegate archive folders, the loading time in theActive Folders tab might take up to five minutes. The delegate archive folder structure keeps synchronizing even though theView Delegate Archive Folder Structure option in Management Console is enabled or disabled. When the delegate account users logs in to Arctera Personal Archive, they can view their folder structure.
Export to Azure private storage location	Determines if the Arctera eDiscovery data can be exported to the Azure location. Toggle the switch to enable or disable this feature.If the status is set to Enabled , the Create new Storage Account button is displayed in Arctera eDiscovery. Click Create new Storage Account to allow a customer to create an Azure storage account during exporting items from Arctera eDiscovery.Note: This is an on-demand feature and is enabled for the customers only after their request for it. It allows customers to create their private storage account and get a storage account SAS URL to work with their storage account. You can configure the status (Enabled or Disabled) and the retention period of this feature from the database only. If the status is set toDisabled, you cannot see theCreate new Storage Account button. You can generate only one Azure storage account per customer. After creating a storage account, theCreate new

ARCHIVE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	Storage Account button gets disabled. If you hover over the disabled button, the Storage account is already created tooltip is displayed. Contact Arctera Customer Service representative to enable it.
OCR Status	Determines whether the Optical Character Recognition (OCR) service is enabled or disabled for customers and displays all the supported file types like <code>.pdf</code> , <code>.jpeg</code> , <code>.png</code> , and more. Toggle to enable or disable this feature in Management Console, Arctera eDiscovery, and Arctera Personal Archive. If the status is set to Enabled , customers can extract text from scanned documents, images, or non-editable files, converting them into searchable and editable formats archived in Management Console, Arctera eDiscovery, and Arctera Personal Archive. Note: This feature is now visible as a read-only section, allowing customers to verify the service activation status. Customers must contact Arctera Support to activate or deactivate the service.
Show Display Name	Determines whether the Show Display Name service configured for users. Toggle to enable or disable viewing the display names of the sender and recipient instead of only email addresses in Arctera eDiscovery, Arctera Personal Archive, and Arctera Personal Archive Mobile Web Applications.
AI Features > eDiscovery InsightAI	This feature is available to customers only if the Arctera eDiscovery primary service is subscribed by them. Toggle to enable or disable this option to view the InsightAI feature in Arctera eDiscovery. If the status is set to Enabled , users can efficiently analyze and manage documents by receiving instant summaries, extracting key topics, and

ARCHIVE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	performing sentiment analysis across various content types like emails, collaboration messages, and files. users can also query specific documents or search results, customize analysis preferences, and monitor resource usage with AI Wallet.If the status is set to Disabled , users cannot access InsightAI services.
AI Features > Personal Archive InsightBooks	This feature is available to customers only if the Arctera eDiscovery primary service is subscribed by them.Toggle to enable or disable this option to view the InsightBooks feature in Arctera Personal Archive.If the status is set to Enabled , users can create, view, and manage InsightBooks, and use GenAI to analyze emails and collaboration content. They can also share InsightBooks with other users and monitor resource usage with AI Wallet.If the status is set to Disabled , customers cannot access InsightBooks services.
AI Features > eDiscovery Translation	This feature is available to customers only if the Arctera eDiscovery primary service is subscribed by them.Toggle to enable or disable this option to view the Translation feature in Arctera eDiscovery.If the status is set to <i>Enabled</i> , users can view the Translate button and manage the translation of email content, collaboration messages, and files. All changes to the eDiscovery Translation option are audited and can be reviewed on the Logs page.If the status is set to <i>Disabled</i> , customers cannot access translation services.
AI Features > Surveillance Translation	This feature is available to customers only if the Arctera Surveillance primary service is subscribed by them.Toggle to enable or disable this option to view the Translation

ARCHIVE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
	feature in Arctera Surveillance.If the status is set to <i>Enabled</i> , users can view the Translate button and manage the translation of email content. All changes to the Surveillance Translation option are audited and can be reviewed on the Logs page.If the status is set to <i>Disabled</i> , customers cannot access translation services.
Show Item ID Filter	Determines whether the Show Item ID Filter service is configured for users. It allows users to locate a single email using its unique, encrypted Item ID.If the status is set to <i>Enabled</i> , the display name appears alongside the email address, providing clearer identification.In the Arctera Personal Archive application, the archive list shows the display name for each archive. If the display name is not available, the first name and last name are shown. If neither is present, the email address is displayed instead.
Enable Folder Search For Personal Archive	Determines whether the Enable Folder Search For Personal Archive service is configured for customer/tenant.If the status is set to <i>Enabled</i> , the Folder Search tab appears in Arctera Personal Archive as shown in the sample image below.

ARCHIVE OPTION	DESCRIPTION
Enable Collaboration View For Personal Archive	 Determines whether the Enable Collaboration View for Personal Archive service is configured for customer/tenant. If the status is set to Enabled, and collaboration tools such as Microsoft Teams, Slack, or other supported platforms are integrated for a user account, then the users can view the Collaboration tab in the left pane of Arctera Personal Archive as shown in the sample image below.

3. Click **Save**

Enabling and disabling account archiving

By default, the messages for all archive accounts are automatically journaled to Arctera Unified Platform. From the Enable/Disable Archiving page, you can disable archiving for certain archive accounts. However, you cannot disable the external users as archiving for these users is disabled by default.

To disable account archiving:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Enable/Disable Archiving**
- Select one of the following archiving options:
 - Archive emails for all users** — archives the email messages for all archive accounts.
 - Archive emails for all users, except anyone listed below** — archives the email messages for all archive accounts except the ones that you select.
 - Archive emails only for the users listed below** — only archives email messages for the archive accounts that you select.
- If required, click **Add/Remove Accounts** to select the archive accounts that you want to exclude or include for archiving.

4. In the **Add/Remove Accounts** window, search for and select the archive accounts that you want to exclude or include for archiving.
5. Click **Save** to close the **Add/Remove Accounts** window.
6. On the **Enable/Disable Archiving** page, click **Save**

Configuring the InsightAI feature

InsightAI, a cutting-edge generative AI assistant, streamlines document review and analysis by delivering rapid summaries, key topic identification, and sentiment evaluations. It supports diverse content types such as emails, files, and chats, enabling users to efficiently manage and understand large volumes of information.

Salient Features:

- **Document Insights:** Generates instant summaries, highlights crucial topics, and analyzes sentiment for individual documents.
- **Search Integration:** Consolidates summaries and identifies key topics from multiple search results across diverse content sources.
- **Query Support:** Provides precise answers to queries related to specific documents or search outcomes, improving clarity and decision-making.
- **Customizable Preferences:** Adapts analysis outputs to user-defined preferences for personalized and relevant results.
- **AI Units transaction Transparency:** Ensures visibility of all Azure OpenAI transactions, allowing system administrators to monitor AI Units usage through the Management Console.
- **Real-Time AI Units Estimation:** Displays immediate usage estimates for queries, promoting efficient resource management.
- **Detailed Breakdown:** Offers a granular view of usage for each query, fostering accountability and transparency.

To configure this feature, See [Configuring archive options](#).

For more details about InsightAI, refer to the [InsightAI: Frequently Asked Questions](#) article.

Configuring an advanced password policy

The default password policy for Arctera Unified Platform requires that all account passwords be at least eight characters long. Additionally, all passwords must contain at least two of the following character types:

- A number between 0 and 9
- A lowercase letter
- An uppercase letter
- A non-alphanumeric character

From the Password Policy page, you can configure an advanced password policy for all archive accounts.

Note: The Password Policy page is not available if you have configured Single Sign-On for account authentication.

To configure an advanced password policy:

1. In the left navigation pane, under **Policy Management**, click **Password Policy**
2. In the **Password Policy** section, under **Advanced Password Policy**, select the requirements you want to include in your password policy.

Refer to the following table for more information:

ENFORCE PASSWORD HISTORY	SELECT THIS REQUIREMENT AND ENTER A VALUE FOR THE NUMBER OF PAST PASSWORDS THAT YOU WANT STORED. USERS CANNOT CHANGE THEIR CURRENT PASSWORD TO A STORED PASSWORD.
Maximum Password Age	Select this requirement and enter a value for the number of days between required password changes.
Minimum Password Age	Select this requirement and enter a value for the minimum of days between password changes. This option controls how often users can change their passwords.
Minimum Password Length	Select this requirement and enter a value for the minimum password length.
Password Must Meet Complexity Requirements	Select this requirement and choose up to three of the following password complexity requirements: • Use base-10 digits characters

ENFORCE PASSWORD HISTORY	SELECT THIS REQUIREMENT AND ENTER A VALUE FOR THE NUMBER OF PAST PASSWORDS THAT YOU WANT STORED. USERS CANNOT CHANGE THEIR CURRENT PASSWORD TO A STORED PASSWORD.
	in password - requires at least one number between 0 and 9• Use lowercase characters in password - requires at least one lowercase letter• Use non-alphanumeric characters in password - requires at least one symbol• Use uppercase characters in password - requires at least one uppercase letter
Prevent Username in Passwords	Select this requirement to prevent users from using their user name in their password.

- If required, select **Enforce the password policies for all users** if you want to require all users to change their passwords during their next login.

Note: If you select this option, all users must change their password during their next login even if the password meets the specified requirements. If you do not select this option, users do not have to change their password until it expires even if the password does not meet the specified requirements.

- Click **Save**

Configuring trusted networks for Arctera Unified Platform access

By default, users can access Arctera Unified Platform from any Internet Protocol (IP) address. From the Set Trusted Networks page, you can restrict access to specific IP address range.

To configure trusted networks for Arctera Unified Platform access:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Set Trusted Networks**.

The **Add Trusted Network** window appears.

- In the **Starting** field, enter the starting IP address of the address range.

3. In the **Ending** field, enter the ending IP address of the address range.
4. Under **Select Application** , select the check box for the Arctera Unified Platform products that you want access restricted.
5. Click **Save**
6. To modify the trusted network, click the **Edit** icon in the corresponding rows. Modify the IP address range, and click **Save**
7. To delete the trusted network, click the **Delete** icon in the corresponding rows.

Managing Custom Headers

A custom header is a title or a description that a user can customize to label specific review items. To add new custom headers and mark these headers as active or inactive, you must have access to the Policy Management page.

Note: You cannot edit or delete the custom header name and datatype values. However, you can activate the required custom headers and deactivate the headers that are no more required.

To add a new custom header:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Custom Header**
2. Click **Add Row**
3. In the newly added row, in the **Name** field, type a custom header title/description.

Note: This is a mandatory field. It can be an alphanumeric value and can contain space. You can use only dot(.) and hyphen(-) as special characters.

4. In the **Datatype** drop-down, specify if the data type is a number, a string, or a date.
5. Ensure that the **Active** check box is selected.

If the Active check box is selected, the custom header remains available for use. You cannot use the custom header if it is not Active.

6. Click **Save**

The application prompts you to confirm that you want to perform the operation.

7. Click **Yes**

Managing Discard Rules

A *Discard Rule* was previously referred as a *Bypass Rule*. This rule is an instruction that bypasses specific review items when the rule is active and applied. To manage discard rules, you must have access to the Policy Management page.

Note: You cannot edit or delete the discard rule. However, you can activate the required rules and deactivate the rules that are no more required.

Adding Discard Rules

To add a new discard rule:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Discard Rules**
2. On the action bar, click **Add Row** , and specify the following details in the newly added row.

SENDERADDRESS	SPECIFY THE VALUE IN THE NAME@EXAMPLE.COM FORMAT ONLY.
Subject	Specify text, number, or an alphanumeric value. You can include spaces and special characters if required.
AttachmentType	Specify the type of attachment.
	If you do not explicitly specify the attachment type, the application considers all types of attachments in the rule.

3. Activate or deactivate the rule.

- To save this rule in the *Active* state, select the **Active** check box. The activated discard rule remains available for use.
- To save this rule in the *Inactive* state, do not select the **Active** check box. The deactivated discard rule remains unavailable for use.

4. On the action bar, click **Save** Upon saving a rule, you cannot modify the *SenderAddress* , *Subject* , and *Attachment Type* values. You can only activate or deactivate it. Therefore, the application prompts you to confirm that you want to perform the operation.
5. Click **Yes** to save the rule. Else, click **No** to abort the operation.

Searching for discard rules

In the action bar of the Discard Rules page, enter partial or full keywords in the search field. Else, in the item grid, click on the column headings to sort the list. The application displays the relevant rules. You can activate or deactivate the rules, but you cannot edit them.

Importing discard rules in bulk

Before importing discard rules in bulk, it is crucial to understand that the existing discard rules will be completely replaced or overwritten during the import. Make sure to review the procedures carefully.

To import discard rules in bulk:

6. Ensure that you have a list of discard rules in the standard *DiscardRule Bulk Import Template*. Refer to [Discard Rules Bulk Import Template](#) article if assistance is required.
7. In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Discard Rules**
8. On the action bar, click **Import**
9. In the **Discard Rules Import** dialog box, do the following as needed:
 - Click the **Sample ".csv" file** to get the sample template.
 - Click **Choose File** to browse and select the CSV file of discard rules.
10. Click **Import**

The application imports the rules in bulk and replaces/overwrites the currently available rules.

To retain existing discard rules during bulk import:

11. Click Export on the action bar to download the current rules as a *DiscardRules.csv* file.
12. Copy or add these rules to the discard rules template.
13. Import the updated template.
14. On the **Discard Rules** page, search any previously available rule to ensure the existing rule is preserved.

Managing Index Exclusion

The *Index Exclusion* feature lets administrators define specific text strings - such as disclaimers, signatures, or repetitive phrases - to be excluded from indexing. This helps improve the accuracy of search before classification of items by ignoring non-essential or irrelevant content.

It is an instruction that excludes specific review items when the index exclusion text is active and applied. To manage Index Exclusion, you must have access to the Policy Management page.

Access to the Index Exclusion feature requires the *Manage Exclusion Texts* privilege. This privilege is enabled by default for users assigned the *System Administrator* or *Policy Manager* roles. *System Administrator* can revoke this privilege from the *Policy Manager* role if needed.

Note: Once you save the index exclusion record, you cannot modify it. However, you can activate or deactivate the index exclusion as needed.

Adding index exclusion text

To add a new index exclusion text:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Index Exclusion**
2. On the action bar, click **Add Row** , and enter the text you want to exclude in the newly added row.
3. Activate or deactivate the index exclusion text.
 - To save this index exclusion text in the *Active* state, select the **Active** check box. The activated index exclusion text remains available for use.
 - To save this index exclusion text in the *Inactive* state, do not select the **Active** check box. The deactivated index exclusion text remains unavailable for use.
4. On the action bar, click **Save**

Upon saving a text, you can only activate or deactivate it. Therefore, the application prompts you to confirm that you want to perform the operation.

5. Click **Yes** to save the record. Else, click **No** to abort the operation.

A notification appears that the index exclusion text is saved successfully.

Searching for index exclusion text

In the action bar of the Index Exclusion page, enter partial or full keywords in the search field. Else, in the item grid, click on the column headings to sort the list. The application displays the relevant index exclusion records. You can activate or deactivate the records, but you cannot edit them.

Importing index exclusion records in bulk

Before importing index exclusion records in bulk, it is crucial to understand that the existing index exclusion records will be completely replaced or overwritten during the import. Make sure to review the procedures carefully.

To import index exclusion records in bulk:

1. Ensure that you have a list of index exclusion records in the standard [Index Exclusion Bulk Import Template](#).
2. In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Index Exclusion**
3. On the action bar, click **Import**
4. In the **Index Exclusion Import** dialog box, do the following as needed:
 - Click the **Sample ".csv" file** to get the sample template.
 - Click **Choose File** to browse and select the CSV file of index exclusion records.
5. Click **Import**

The application imports the index exclusion records in bulk and replaces/overwrites the currently available records.

Retaining existing index exclusion records during bulk import

To retain existing index exclusion records during bulk import:

1. Click **Export** on the action bar to download the current records as a *IndexExclusions.csv* file.
2. Copy or add these records to this template.
3. Import the updated template.
4. On the **Index Exclusion** page, search any previously available record to ensure the existing record is preserved.

Managing Authentication

This section includes the following topics:

- [Configuring the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service](#)
- [Enabling the Authentication Settings permission for the Policy Manager role](#)
- [Assigning the Policy Manager role to an administrator](#)
- [Selecting an authentication method](#)
- [Uploading a signing certificate](#)
- [Validating the Identity Provider URL](#)
- [Activating single sign-on](#)

Configuring the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service

This section describes how to configure the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service to work with the following environments:

- Cloud Archive Database
- Single Sign-On Authentication (SSO) Active Directory Federation Services (ADFS)
- Single Sign-On Authentication (SSO)

Before using Cloud Archive Database, do the following:

1. See [Configuring an advanced password policy](#). to understand password complexity rules.
2. Provide your username and password when accessing Arctera Personal Archive.

Before using SSO and SSO-ADFS environments, do the following:

3. Configure your federation server to work with the *Archiving Single Sign-On* authentication service.
4. Set up Active Directory user synchronization either with CloudLink or Office 365 Sync through the Provisioning options.

For additional details on the supported Single Sign-On providers and guidance on configuring them, refer to the [Arctera Unified Platform Compatibility List](#)

After configuring the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service and your ADFS environment, you can provide single sign-on access to Arctera Personal Archive users.

[Table: Arctera Unified Platform authentication service configuration](#) summarizes the steps to configure the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service to work with your AD FS environment.

Table: Arctera Unified Platform authentication service configuration

STEP	ACTION	REFERENCE
Step 1	In Arctera Management Console, enable the Authentication Settings permission for the Policy Manager role.	See Enabling the Authentication Settings permission for the Policy Manager role
Step 2	Assign the Policy Manager role with the Authentication Settings permission enabled to an administrator.	See Assigning the Policy Manager role to an administrator
Step 3	On the Authentication Management page, select ADFS as the authentication method for your organization.	See Selecting an authentication method
Step 4	Upload the signing certificate that you generated from your ADFS environment.	See Uploading a signing certificate
Step 5	Validate the Identity Provider URL for your organization.	See Validating the Identity Provider URL
Step 6	Activate single sign-on for Arctera Personal Archive users.	See Activating single sign-on

Enabling the Authentication Settings permission for the Policy Manager role

The Authentication Management page in Arctera Management Console lets you configure the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service. Only the administrators that have the Authentication Settings permission enabled can access the Authentication Management page. By default, only the System Administrator role has the Authentication Settings permission enabled. If required, you can enable this permission for the Policy Manager role and assign the role to an administrator that is not a system administrator. Since the Policy Manager role has limited permissions, you can provide the Authentication Settings permission to an administrator without providing them the full system administrator permissions.

To enable the Authentication Settings permission for the Policy Manager role:

1. In the left navigation pane, under **Role Management**, click **Administration Roles**
2. In the **Built-in Roles** section, click **Policy Manager**, and then select **Authentication Settings**
3. Click **Save**

Assigning the Policy Manager role to an administrator

After you enable the *Authentication Settings* permission for the Policy Manager role, you can assign the role to the administrator that you want to manage the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service.

Note: The administrator may need to log out and log back in to Arctera Management Console before they can access the Authentication Management page.

To assign the Policy Manager role to an administrator:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Assign Accounts**
2. From the user list, search for and select the *Administrator* to which you want to assign the role.

You can use the filters to search for the required *Administrator*.

3. On the **Role Change** page, in the **Role** drop-down, select *Administrator*.
4. Expand the **Built-in Roles** section and select **Policy Manager**
5. Click **Save**

Selecting an authentication method

To manage secured user access to other Arctera Unified Platform applications for example, Arctera Personal Archive, you must configure the authentication service in Arctera Management Console. You can select your preferred authentication method. This helps customers to centrally control access to archived databases across multiple cloud platforms by using corporate Single Sign-On (SSO) policies.

Prerequisite

Before you configure SSO authentication, you must:

- Refer to the [Arctera Management Console Compatibility List](#) for supported SSO providers.
- Configure your enterprise server to integrate with the archiving SSO authentication service.
- Set up Active Directory user synchronization using CloudLink or MS Office 365 Sync in the *Provisioning* options.

To select an authentication method:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Authentication Management**, and click **Edit**
2. Under **Setup Authentication**, in the **Authentication Type** field, select the required type of authentication method and perform the corresponding actions.

AUTHENTICATION TYPE	DESCRIPTION
Cloud Archive Database	Upon selecting this option, specify the following options\:
	1. Password Change Required? : Select Yes to ask users to change their password during their initial login after configuring their authentication setup. Users need to provide their username and password when accessing the application that is configured for SSO. For example, Arctera Personal Archive. To understand password complexity rules, See Configuring an advanced password policy . Select No if users do not need to change their password during their initial login.

AUTHENTICATION TYPE	DESCRIPTION
	2. Multi Factor Authentication Required? Select Yes to set requirement for multi-factor authentication. Upon selecting Yes , the Type Of Authentication Required? field appears. Currently, users can use either Email or TOTP authentication option. Selecting Email requires users to verify via a link or OTP sent to their registered email. Selecting TOTP requires users to authenticate using a time-based one-time password via an authenticator app. Select No if multi-factor authentication is not required.
	3. Click Save to finish the configuration.
Single Sign-On ADFS	Upon selecting this option, specify the following options\:
	1. Hybrid Login Allowed? : Select Yes to enable hybrid login. The Multi Factor Authentication Required? option remains available. Select No to disable hybrid login. The Multi Factor Authentication Required? option becomes unavailable. Note: This option is supported only if theSingle Sign-On - ADFSauthentication type is selected. For other Multi Factor Authentication options, such as Azure, Okta, OneLogin, and so on, this option remainsdisabled.
	2. Role Claims Enabled? : Select Yes to assign role-based SSO response. Select No to avoid role-based SSO response.
	3. Multi Factor Authentication Required? : Select Yes to assign role-based SSO response. When Hybrid Login is enabled, multi factor authentication applies only when users log in with the CloudArchive credentials to access Arctera Unified Platform applications. Upon selecting Yes ,

AUTHENTICATION TYPE	DESCRIPTION
	the Type Of Authentication Required? field appears. Currently, users can use either Email or TOTP authentication option. Selecting Email requires users to verify via a link or OTP sent to their registered email. Selecting TOTP requires users to authenticate using a time-based one-time password via an authenticator app. Select No to avoid role-based SSO response.
	4. Unique OWA IdP : Specifies if you want to set any external authentication service to verify user credentials while accessing Outlook. Select Yes to specify a separate identity provider for Outlook access. Upon selecting Yes , the Unique OWA CID field appears. Select Yes to assign a distinct client ID for each session to enhance security by preventing unauthorized access and session hijacking. Select No to avoid assigning a distinct client ID for each session. Select No to avoid specifying a separate identity provider.
	5. Your Trust Information : Upon saving, the application displays the Customer ID , Unique OWA Client ID , and Entity ID , if enabled during configuration.
	6. Select the I have read the instructions for setting the provided Entity ID and created my public key for upload. check box to confirm your configuration.
	7. Click Save to finish the configuration.
Single Sign-On - SAML 2.0 based :	Upon selecting this option, specify the following options\:
	1. Hybrid Login Allowed? : Select Yes to enable hybrid login. The Multi Factor Authentication Required? option remains

AUTHENTICATION TYPE	DESCRIPTION
	available. Select No to disable hybrid login. The Multi Factor Authentication Required? option becomes unavailable. Note: This option is supported only if the Single Sign-On - SAML 2.0 authentication type is selected.
	2. Role Claims Enabled? : Select Yes to assign role-based SSO response. Select No to avoid role-based SSO response.
	3. Multi Factor Authentication Required? : Select Yes to assign role-based SSO response. When Hybrid Login is enabled, multi factor authentication applies only when users log in with the CloudArchive credentials to access Arctera Unified Platform applications. Upon selecting Yes , the Type Of Authentication Required? field appears. Currently, users can use either Email or TOTP authentication option. Selecting Email requires users to verify via a link or OTP sent to their registered email. Selecting TOTP requires users to authenticate using a time-based one-time password via an authenticator app. Select No to avoid role-based SSO response.
	4. Unique OWA IdP : Specifies if you want to set any external authentication service to verify user credentials while accessing Outlook. Select Yes to specify a separate identity provider for Outlook access. Upon selecting Yes , the Unique OWA CID field appears. Select Yes to assign a distinct client ID for each session to enhance security by preventing unauthorized access and session hijacking. Select No to avoid assigning a distinct client ID for each session. Select No to avoid specifying a separate identity provider.

AUTHENTICATION TYPE	DESCRIPTION
	5. Your Trust Information : Upon saving, the application displays the Customer ID , Unique OWA Client ID , and Entity ID , if enabled during configuration.
	6. Select the I have read the instructions for setting the provided Entity ID and created my public key for upload. check box to confirm your configuration.
	7. Click Save to finish the configuration.

Uploading a signing certificate

After you select AD FS as the authentication method for your organization, you must upload a signing certificate from your AD FS environment.

See [Configuring AD FS to work with Arctera Unified Platform](#).

From the Upload Your Public Key section on the Authentication Management page, you can upload your signing certificate. The Upload Your Public Key section displays after you complete the Setup Authentication section.

To upload a signing certificate:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Authentication Management**
2. Under the **Upload Your Public Key** section, click **Browse and Upload**
3. Select the signing certificate that you have generated.

Note: The signing certificate that you upload must have a `.cer` or `.cert` file extension.

4. In the **Public Key Upload** confirmation window, click **Return to Setup** to proceed to the next step.

Validating the Identity Provider URL

After you upload a signing certificate, you must validate the Identity Provider URL for your organization. From the Validate Relying Trust section on the Authentication Management page, you can validate the Identity Provider URL and the OWA Identity Provider URL, if necessary. The Validate Relying Trust section displays after you complete the Upload Your Public Key section.

To validate the Identity Provider URL:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Policy Management>Authentication Management**
2. Under the **Validate Relying Trust** section, enter the Identity Provider URL for your organization in the **Identity Provider URL** field.

Note: The Identity Provider URL is normally the fully qualified domain name of the AD FS server or AD FS proxy, followed by adfs/ls. For example, the Identity Provider URL for an AD FS server named adfswith a fully qualified domain name of example.com is https://adfs.example.com/adfs/ls. The Arctera Unified Platform authentication service currently does not support Identity Provider URLs that contain a dash. If you have an Identity Provider URL that contains a dash, contact Arctera Services & Support.

3. If required, enter the OWA Identity Provider URL for your organization in the **OWA Identity Provider URL** field.

Note: The OWA Identity Provider URL field only displays if you selected **Yes** in the Unique OWA IdP field in the Setup Authentication section.

4. Click **Validate**
5. After the **Validation Successful** message displays, click **Save** to proceed to the next step.

Activating single sign-on

After you validate the Identity Provider URL, you must activate single sign-on for Arctera Personal Archive users. From the Activate SSO section on the Authentication Management page, you can activate single sign-on. The Activate SSO section displays after you complete the Validate Relying Trust section.

To activate single sign-on:

1. In the **Activate SSO** section, click **Activate SSO**
2. After the **Activation Successful** message displays, you can provide the URLs that are listed in the Application Login URL(s) section to Arctera Personal Archive users.

Note: The Arctera Unified Platform credentials that you provided to users before you configured the authentication service and activated single sign-on can still be used to log in to Arctera Personal Archive.

Managing Retention Policies

This section includes the following topics:

- [About Retention Management](#)
- [Supported retention scenarios for WORM and non-WORM Arctera Unified Platform customers](#)
- [Configuring the default retention period](#)
- [Creating a retention policy](#)
- [Editing a retention policy](#)
- [Deleting a retention policy](#)
- [Associating a retention policy with a policy target](#)
- [Disassociating a retention policy from a policy target](#)
- [Enabling and disabling the storage expiry setting](#)
- [Viewing the storage expiry status table](#)

About Retention Management

From the Retention Management section, you can manage the settings and policies that determine how long archived messages are retained in Arctera Unified Platform. By default, Arctera Unified Platform retains archived messages indefinitely (although this is not recommended since it will result in Storage overages in future). If required, you can configure Arctera Unified Platform to collect archived messages for removal after those messages have been retained for a defined retention period.

The default retention period is a global setting that determines how long archived messages are retained before they are collected for removal. After you configure the global retention period and enable the storage expiry setting, the collection of archived messages for removal begins. During the daily collection events, any messages that have been retained for longer than the default retention period are scheduled for removal 14 days later. The Retention Administrator receives daily notification emails during the 14-day grace period informing them of the number of archived messages that are scheduled for removal.

Note: Any archived messages that have a matter-level, search-level, or message-level legal hold applied from Arctera eDiscovery are not removed.

Beyond the global retention period, the retention period for archived messages can be modified by creating retention policies to associate with the following policy targets. See [Supported retention scenarios for WORM and non-WORM Arctera Unified Platform customers](#).

- **Managed Tags-based retention:** A global tag that you create and assign to users. Once you create a managed tag and associate a retention policy, users can apply the tag to archived messages to modify their retention period. The retention period of the associated retention policy determines how long tagged messages are retained in Arctera Unified Platform.
- **Active Directory Groups and Distribution List based retention:** The Active Directory Groups or Distribution List are synchronized using provisioning services. Associating a retention policy with the active directory groups or distribution list modify the retention period of the archived messages for all members of that group or list. The retention period of the associated retention policy determines how long the messages for the members are retained in Arctera Unified Platform.
- **Classification-based retention:** The retention period applied to items during archiving is determined by several factors. See [Supported retention scenarios for WORM and non-WORM Arctera Unified Platform customers](#).. Retention is applied in the following order:
 - If a classification-based retention policy is not applied to the item, then the longest retention policy among the multiple applicable retention policies gets applied to it.
 - If a classification-based retention policy is applied to the item, and this classification policy has an associated retention policy, then retention of that item is determined by the retention policy associated with the applied classification policy. Classification-based retention supersedes retention set by other means, irrespective of whether it is shorter or longer than any other applicable retention policies for that item.

In the above-mentioned example, if the item is responsive to more than one classification policy with associated retention policies, then the longest retention policy is applied. Classification-based retention supersedes retention set by other means as mentioned above.

Supported retention scenarios for WORM and non-WORM Arctera Unified Platform customers

This section provides the retention scenarios that are supported for the WORM and non-WORM Arctera Unified Platform customers.

WORM storage-specific scenarios

- Setting retention of items as these are archived:
 - Default retention
 - Per user
 - AD Group membership
 - Classification-based retention
 - Search and tagging
- Extending retention of items:
 - Search and tagging (WORM policy on items is not updated)
 - Classification-based retention (via paid *Reindex* option)
- Shortening retention of items:
 - Not supported if the item is already archived.
 - Supported only at the time of archiving.

During archiving, every item is assessed/evaluated for its retention period. If the retention period of an item is shorter than the tenant-level WORM policy (typically 7 or 10 years), both periods are set to the same value. This process occurs automatically, without any direct involvement from end users. It is executed using one of the following scenarios according to the policy.

- Per user
- AD Group Membership
- Classification-based retention

Non-WORM storage-specific scenarios

- Setting retention of items as these are archived
 - Default retention
 - Per user
 - AD Group membership
 - Classification-based retention
 - Search and tagging
- Extending retention of items

- Search and tagging (WORM policy on items is not updated)
- Classification-based retention (via paid *Reindex* option)
- Shortening retention of items
 - Search and tagging
 - Classification-based retention (via paid *Reindex* option)

Configuring the default retention period

The default retention period determines how long archived messages are retained in Arctera Unified Platform. To begin the process of removing messages from Arctera Unified Platform, you configure the default retention period and enable the storage expiry setting.

Note: If Advanced Supervision service is enabled, Default Retention Period appears as read only and cannot be modified.

To configure the default retention period:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Retention Policies**
2. In the **Default Retention Period** section, click **Edit**
3. In the **Days** field, enter the retention period.
4. Click **Save**

Note: After you configure the default retention period for the first time, you can only edit the existing period. If you no longer want to collect archived messages for removal from Arctera Unified Platform, you can disable the storage expiry setting.

Creating a retention policy

Beyond the default retention period, the retention period for archived messages can be extended by creating retention policies to associate with policy targets. The policy targets that can be associated with a retention policy include managed tags, active directory groups, and distribution list.

To create a retention policy:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Retention Management>Retention Policies**
2. Click **Create New**
3. On the **Retention Policy** page, specify the following: in the **Policy Name** field.

POLICY NAME	ENTER A UNIQUE NAME FOR THE RETENTION POLICY.
Retention Period (in days)	Enter the retention period for the policy in days.
Description	Provide a short description for the retention policy.
Policy Status	Set the status as Enabled if you want the retention policy to be enabled once you create it.
	Set the status as Disabled if you want to create a policy, but do not want the retention policy to be disabled till further decision.

4. Click **Save**

Editing a retention policy

If required, you can edit the details of existing retention policies. The details you can edit include the policy name, the retention period, the policy status, and the policy description.

To edit a retention policy:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Retention Management>Retention Policies**
2. In the **Policy Name** column of the retention policies list, click the name of the retention policy you want to edit.
3. In the top-right corner of the **Retention Policy** page, click **Edit**
4. Edit the following details of the retention policy.

POLICY NAME	UPDATE A UNIQUE NAME FOR THE RETENTION POLICY, IF REQUIRED.
Retention Period (in days)	Change the retention period for the policy in days, if required.
Description	Provide a short description for the retention policy.
Policy Status	Set the status as Enabled if you want the retention policy to be enabled once you create it.
	Set the status as Disabled if you want to create a policy, but do not want the retention policy to be disabled till further decision.

5. Click **Save**

Deleting a retention policy

You can delete any retention policies that are no longer needed. However, you cannot delete a retention policy if it is associated with a policy target.

To delete a retention policy:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Retention Management>Retention Policies**
2. Select the policy you want to delete.
3. In the **Delete** column of the retention policies list, click the **Delete** icon in the corresponding row.

The application prompts you to confirm that you want to perform the operation.

4. Click **Yes**

Associating a retention policy with a policy target

After you create a retention policy, you can associate it with a policy target. The policy targets that can be associated with a retention policy include managed tags and Active Directory Distribution List.

Note: You can associate a retention policy with more than one policy target. However, each policy target can only be associated with one retention policy.

To associate a retention policy with a policy target:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Retention Management>Retention Policies**
2. Click on the policy you want to associate with a target.
3. Under **Policy Details** , ensure that the policy details are appropriate.
4. Under **Targets**, click **Add Targets** The **Policy Target** window appears.
5. In the **Target Type** drop-down, one of the following targeted users to associate with the policy.
The currently available options:

- All
- Distribution Lists
- Tags
- **Active Directory Groups :**

This option allows customers who sync Azure Active Directory groups using **ADGroupSync** or **SCIM Group Sync** to use group membership information for retention.

You must associate Managed Tags when a policy is set to target Active Directory Groups. Managed Tags are applied to items based on group membership at the time the items are received. Therefore, when the Managed Tags are not associated, the group membership is evaluated only at the time of item expiry.

6. Click **Add**

Disassociating a retention policy from a policy target

If required, you can disassociate a retention policy from a policy target.

To disassociate a retention policy from a policy target:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Retention Management>Retention Policies**
2. Under **Policy Details** , ensure that the policy details are appropriate.
3. Under **Targets** , select the target you want to disassociate.
4. In the **Remove** column of the target list, click the **Delete** icon.

The application prompts you to confirm that you want to perform the operation.

5. Click **Yes**

Enabling and disabling the storage expiry setting

After you configure a default retention period, you must enable the storage expiry setting before the collection of archived messages for removal begins.

Any archived messages that meet one or more of the following conditions are not removed from Arctera Unified Platform:

- Messages that have a matter-level, a search-level, or message-level legal hold applied from Arctera eDiscovery.
- Messages that have a managed tag applied that is associated with a retention policy that has a retention period that exceeds the default retention period.
- Messages of an Active Directory distribution group member that is associated with a retention policy that has a retention policy that exceeds the default retention period.

Note: Any archived messages that are removed from Arctera Unified Platform cannot be retrieved after removal is complete. If Advanced Supervision service is enabled, Storage Expiry is set to Daily by default and cannot be modified.

To enable or disable the storage expiry setting:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Retention Management > Storage Expiry**
2. On the top-right corner of the page, click **Edit**
3. In the **Storage Expiry** section, do one of the following:
 - Select **Daily** to enable the storage expiry setting.
 - Select **Never** to disable the storage expiry setting.
4. Click **Save**

Viewing the storage expiry status table

After you configure the default retention period and enable the storage expiry setting, the collection of archived messages for removal begins. From the Storage Expiry page, you can view a status table with the following information about each batch of messages being removed:

DATE	INDICATES THE DATE AND TIME THE BATCH WAS CREATED
Number of Emails	Indicates the number of archive messages in the batch.
Expiration Status	Indicates the current status for the batch. - Completed - the batch of messages have been removed. - In progress - the batch of messages are in the process of being removed. - Not started - the batch of messages are in the queue for removal.

Note: The 14-day cool-off period begins when items are batched for expiry. During this period, items remain on the storage expiry list. After 14 days, the items are permanently deleted.

To view the storage expiry status table:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Retention Management>Storage Expiry**
- If required, select one of the following options in the **Expiration Status** field to filter the table:
 - All** — select to view the status of all batches of messages being removed.
 - Not Started** — select to view only the batches of messages that are in the queue for removal.
 - In Progress** — select to view only the batches of messages that are in the process of being removed.
 - Completed** — select to view only the batches of messages that have been removed.

Managing Email Continuity Services

This section includes the following topics:

- [About Email Continuity](#)
- [Email Continuity prerequisites](#)
- [Configuring Email Continuity](#)
- [Provisioning the Email Continuity service for your mail servers](#)
- [Adding the Email Continuity IP ranges to your firewall and mail server allowlists](#)
- [Updating your email security provider routing configuration](#)
- [Testing the Email Continuity configuration](#)
- [Managing Email Continuity](#)
- [Email Continuity FAQ](#)

About Email Continuity

Email Continuity is an add-on feature that allows Arctera Personal Archive users to send and receive email messages during a mail server outage.

Incoming email messages are typically routed through your email security provider to your mail server. After the messages reach the mail server, they are journaled to Arctera Unified Platform. Outgoing messages from your mail server are typically journaled to Arctera Unified Platform before they reach their recipients. However, during a mail server outage your mail server cannot receive, send, or journal email messages.

Email Continuity lets you configure your email security provider to use Arctera Unified Platform as a secondary gateway for your email when your mail server is unavailable. During a mail server outage your email security provider routes mail to Arctera Unified Platform, and users can receive and send email messages through Arctera Personal Archive. When the mail server outage ends the Email Continuity service automatically flushes all the email messages that were sent and received during the outage to your mail server or relay server, for normal delivery.

Note: During an outage, the Email Continuity service attempts to flush messages to your mail server every 5 minutes for up to 7 days.

Email Continuity prerequisites

Before you can configure Email Continuity you must ensure that you use a compatible email security platform.

For information about the email security platforms that Email Continuity supports, refer to the [Arctera Unified Platform Compatibility List](#).

Configuring Email Continuity

Table: Steps to configure Email Continuity lists the steps you need to take to configure Email Continuity.

Table: Steps to configure Email Continuity

STEP	ACTION	REFERENCE
Step 1	Get Arctera Services & Support to provision the Email Continuity service for your mail servers.	See Provisioning the Email Continuity service for your mail servers
Step 2	Add the Email Continuity IP ranges to your firewall and to your mail server allowlists, as required.	See Adding the Email Continuity IP ranges to your firewall and mail server allowlists
Step 3	Configure your email security provider to use Email Continuity as a secondary route for email.	See Updating your email security provider routing configuration
Step 4	Test the new setup to ensure that Email Continuity is configured correctly.	See Testing the Email Continuity configuration

Provisioning the Email Continuity service for your mail servers

You must get Arctera Services and Support to provision the Email Continuity service for your company, and to give you the additional information, you need to set up Email Continuity.

To provision the Email Continuity service for your mail servers:

1. Obtain a list of all the inbound domains that your mail server uses.
2. Log on to the Arctera Unified Platform Arctera Management Console |
3. In the left navigation pane, select **Configuration>Services**
4. Under the **Domains** section, check whether all of your mail server's inbound domains are listed.

If any of the domains are not present, make a note of the missing domains.

5. Contact [Arctera Services & Support](#) and do as follows:
 - Inform Arctera Services & Support that you want to add Email Continuity as an Arctera Unified Platform service for your organization.
 - If you found in step 4 that any of your mail server inbound domains were not configured in Arctera Management Console, ask Arctera Services & Support to add the required inbound domains to your Arctera Unified Platform company configuration.
 - Provide Arctera Services & Support with the IP address and the domain name for each mail server for which you want to enable Email Continuity. They can then provision the Email Continuity service for your company.

Note: Email Continuity can be configured for only one mail server per domain.

- From Arctera Services & Support, obtain the following information that needs to be used in the next steps:
 - The Arctera Unified Platform Email Continuity IP ranges for your Arctera Unified Platform instance.
 - The Arctera Unified Platform Email Continuity mail server domain for your geographical region.

Adding the Email Continuity IP ranges to your firewall and mail server allowlists

You must add the Email Continuity IP ranges that you obtained from Arctera Services & Support to your firewall allowlist and your mail server allowlist, as appropriate.

To add the Email Continuity IP ranges to your firewall and mail server allowlists:

1. Log on to the control panel for your firewall or mail server.

2. Add the IP ranges for your Arctera Unified Platform instance to port 25 (SMTP).
3. If Email Continuity is to flush back messages to your mail server rather than to a relay server, add the same IP address range to your Exchange receive connector or to your Domino allowed hosts. This step enables the mail server to relay the flushed back messages on to your users.

Updating your email security provider routing configuration

You must configure your email security provider to route email to Email Continuity as the last route in its routing list. The email security provider needs to route the mail to the Email Continuity server domain when your normal message routes fail.

For this procedure you need the Arctera Unified Platform Email Continuity mail server domain that you obtained from Arctera Services & Support.

To update your email security provider routing configuration:

1. Log on to the control panel for your email security provider.
2. Add the Arctera Unified Platform Email Continuity mail server domain as the last domain to use when routing mail.

Testing the Email Continuity configuration

You must confirm that Email Continuity has been configured correctly and that it works successfully in the event of a mail server failure.

To test the Email Continuity configuration:

1. Contact [Arctera Services & Support](#), and have them test the Email Continuity connectivity, to confirm that flush back is configured correctly.
2. At a convenient time such as out of normal office hours, pause the SMTP receiver of your mail server to simulate a mail server failure. This action should now trigger your email security provider to fail over to Email Continuity. Then try each of the following:
 - Test that you can receive email from external email addresses to your account in Arctera Personal Archive.
 - Test that you can send email from Arctera Personal Archive to an external email address.
 - Test that you can send email from Arctera Personal Archive to an internal email address.
3. Restart your email service and verify that the test emails you sent and received in Arctera Personal Archive in the previous step are flushed back to your mail server.

Managing Email Continuity

You can configure the option to display the Email Continuity status to users and to view a summary of the service. The Continuity Management option is available only if your organization subscribes to Email Continuity.

To manage Email Continuity:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Continuity Management**
2. Under **Email Continuity Settings**, select the **Indicate EC Active** check box to notify users during a mail server outage.
3. In the summary table, review the information that is provided about the Domain Names, respective Mail Servers, and the Email Continuity service during outages is active or not.

Email Continuity FAQ

The following frequently asked questions provide more information about Email Continuity.

- During Email Continuity configuration, which IP address ranges do I need to add to my firewall or mail server allowlist?

The IP ranges vary by region. For details, contact [Arctera Services & Support](#).

- How do I enable Email Continuity during a mail server outage?

Email Continuity is enabled automatically during an outage.

- How do I flush email messages to our mail server after an outage?

After an outage, the Email Continuity service automatically flushes all the email messages that were sent and received during the outage to your mail server.

- Where do the email messages that are flushed to our mail server appear in Microsoft Outlook?

All the email messages that were sent and received during the outage appear in your Outlook Inbox folder.

- After a mail server outage, do I receive a notification once email messages are flushed to our mail server?

No, no notification is provided after the Email Continuity service finishes flushing email messages back to your mail server.

- Do distribution lists get expanded by the Email Continuity service?

No, the Email Continuity service does not expand distribution lists. However, distribution lists are expanded for the email messages that are flushed back to your mail server after an outage.

Managing Reports and Notifications

This section includes the following topics:

- [About Arctera Unified Platform reports and notifications](#)
- [Reports](#)
- [Usage](#)
- [Logs](#)
- [Notifications](#)
- [Capture](#)

About Arctera Unified Platform reports and notifications

This section explains you about generating various Arctera Unified Platform and Arctera Capture-specific reports, logs and notifications for your organization. You can export the logs and reports in various file formats.

Reports

This section describes procedures to generate various reports in Arctera Management Console.

Generating Messaging reports

The Messaging Report displays information about Arctera Unified Platform usage based on the following parameters:

- The average size of archived messages by user.
- The average number of messages that are archived per user each day.
- The average size of message attachments.
- The average search speed for users in your organization.
- The total number of archived messages that have been imported and their sizes.

This report contains a summary for the selected period. Click on any date to view corresponding detailed report.

To generate a Messaging report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Reports**
2. On the **Archiving Scorecard** page, select the **Messaging** tab.
3. In the top-right corner of the page, select the parameter for which you want to generate a report.

The available options are *Message Size* , *Message User* , *Search Speed* , *Emails Imported*.

4. Select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
5. If required, select **Compare to All Companies** to compare your usage to other organizations.
6. Click **Apply**
7. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
8. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format., click the **Export** icon.

Generating Arctera Personal Archive reports

The Arctera Personal Archive report displays information about Arctera Personal Archive usage based on the following parameters:

- The number of users that have logged in to Arctera Personal Archive.
- The number of managed tags that have been created per user.
- The number of managed tags that have been applied per user.
- The number of searches that have been performed.
- The average search speed for users in your organization.
- A list of the search strings that have been used.
- A list of user accounts who have crossed 80 percent limit of their folder count.

Additionally, you can compare the Arctera Personal Archive usage of your organization with the usage of other organizations

To generating a Arctera Personal Archive report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Reports**
2. On the **Archiving Scorecard** page, select the **Personal Archive** tab.
3. In the top-right corner of the page, select the parameter for which you want to generate a report.

The available options are *User Logins* , *Tags Created* , *Tags Applied* , *Search Performed* , *Search Speed* , *Search Strings* , *Folder Counts* , and *Delete Emails*.

Note: If you select the *Delete Emails* option, specify the date range for which you want to view the details of the deleted emails of end users, email address of sender-recipient, email address of the person who executed the delete activity, and subject of email. Click **Search**. These parameters are available only if you want to view and export deleted emails report.

4. For other options (except the *Delete Emails* option), select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
5. If required, select **Compare to All Companies** to compare your usage to other organizations.
6. Click **Search**
7. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
8. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format., click the **Export** icon.

Generating Arctera eDiscovery reports

Arctera eDiscovery reports display information about Arctera eDiscovery administration actions based on the following parameters:

To generate an Arctera eDiscovery report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Reports**
2. On the **Archiving Scorecard** page, select the** eDiscovery** tab.
3. In the top-right corner of the page, select the parameter for which you want to generate a report.

The available options are as follows:

- **Hidden Emails** : Lets you view detailed report of hidden emails from end users.
- **Unhidden Emails** : Lets you view detailed report of unhidden emails to end users.
- **Delete Emails**: Lets you view detailed report of deleted emails of end users. Specify the date range for which you want to view the details, email address of sender-recipient, email address of the person who executed the delete activity, and subject of email. click **Search**. These parameters are available only if you want to view and export deleted emails report.

- **Mail Reassignment** : Lets you view detailed report of reassigned emails of end users.
4. For other options (except the *Delete Emails* option), select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
 5. If required, select **Compare to All Companies** to compare your usage to other organizations.
 6. Click **Search**
 7. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
 8. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format., click the **Export** icon.

See [About Arctera Unified Platform reports and notifications](#).

Generating Transcription reports

The Transcription report displays information about the transcription service usage within a specified duration. This report lets users analyze unprocessed files and identify reasons for transcription failure. The following parameters are displayed on the report.

- The total files processed for transcription.
- The total files transcribed successfully.
- The total files for which transcription failed.

To generate a Transcription report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Reports**
2. On the **Archiving Scorecard** page, select the **Transcription** tab.
3. Specify the duration (From date-To date) for which you want to generate a report.
4. Click **Search** to view the transcription-specific statistics.

It displays the number of files processed for transcription, files successfully transcribed, and files for which transcription failed for some reason. The report shows file names, the user who processed each file, processing date and time, transcription status (successful or failed), and reasons for transcription failure.

If the list is extensive, follow these steps for your convenience:

- Choose the number of files you want the application to display per page.
- Use navigation arrows at the bottom of the page for easy access to the first, previous, next, and last pages.

5. To export the report in Excel, PDF, CSV, or Word format, click the **Export** icon located near the **Search** button.

Generating Personal Archive Mobile Web Access reports

This report displays information about Personal Archive Mobile Web Access usage based on the following parameters:

- The number of users that have logged in to Personal Archive Mobile Web Access.
- The number of searches that have been performed.
- A list of the search strings that have been used.

Additionally, you can compare the Personal Archive Mobile Web Access usage of your organization with the usage of other organizations.

To generate a Personal Archive Mobile Web Access report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Reports**
2. On the **Archiving Scorecard** page, select the **Personal Archive Mobile Web Access** tab.
3. In the top-right corner of the page, select the parameter for which you want to generate a report.

The available options are *User Logins* , *Search Performed* , and *Search Strings*.

4. Select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
5. If required, select **Compare to All Companies** to compare your usage to other organizations.
6. Click **Apply**
7. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
8. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format., click the **Export** icon.

Generating message reconciliation report

Only users for whom the Reconciliation Report Notifications feature is enabled can generate this report. To enable this feature, contact your system administrator.

The reconciliation data table provides a detailed view of items that are received through journaling addresses and collected by the archive collectors configured for the user. This information is also

represented graphically in a bar chart, which categorizes the data by collector and references the entries in the Collectors List for correlation.

Users can generate, view, and download reconciliation report that provides users with a real-time insight into message flow and reconciliation metrics, enhancing their operational control and efficiency through direct data access.

To generate a message reconciliation report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications > Reports**.
2. On the **Archiving Scorecard** page, select the **Message reconciliation report** tab.

3. Specify the duration (From date-To date) for which you want to generate a report.
4. Click **Search** to view the transcription-specific statistics.
5. If the list is extensive, follow these steps for your convenience, and click **Search**.
 - From the **Source Type** drop-down, choose a specific source type or select ALL to include all types.
 - From the **Collectors List** drop-down, choose a specific collector or select ALL to include every configured collector.
 - From the **Journal Addresses** drop-down, choose a specific journaling address or select ALL to include all addresses.
 - On the page navigation bar, perform the following as needed:
 - Select the number of items to display per page. The application displays 100 items per page by default.
 - Use the arrows to move to the first, previous, next, or last page.

The reconciliation data table and graph update automatically based on the selected criteria.

Reconciliation data in tabular format

Message Reconciliation for items received via journaling and collected via Insight Capture

Source Type
ALL

Collectors List
ALL

Journal Addresses
ALL

Identity	Type	Source	Session ID	Run Date	Total Received/Collected	Total Archived	Total Duplicate	Invalid Domain	Total Failed	Total Unprocessed	Archive Exclusion	Skipped Users
evctestcompany@journal.qa.archivecloud...	Journal Ad...	Office 365	NA	22/12/2025	94	94	0	0	0	0	0	0
evctestcompany@journal.qa.archivecloud...	Journal Ad...	Office 365	NA	27/12/2025	88	88	0	0	0	0	0	0
evctestcompany@journal.qa.archivecloud...	Journal Ad...	Office 365	NA	28/12/2025	92	90	2	0	0	0	0	0
evctestcompany@journal.qa.archivecloud...	Journal Ad...	Office 365	NA	29/12/2025	94	93	1	0	0	0	0	0
evctestcompany@journal.qa.archivecloud...	Journal Ad...	Office 365	NA	30/12/2025	82	82	0	0	0	0	0	0
evctestcompany@journal.qa.archivecloud...	Journal Ad...	Office 365	NA	31/12/2025	82	79	3	0	0	0	0	0

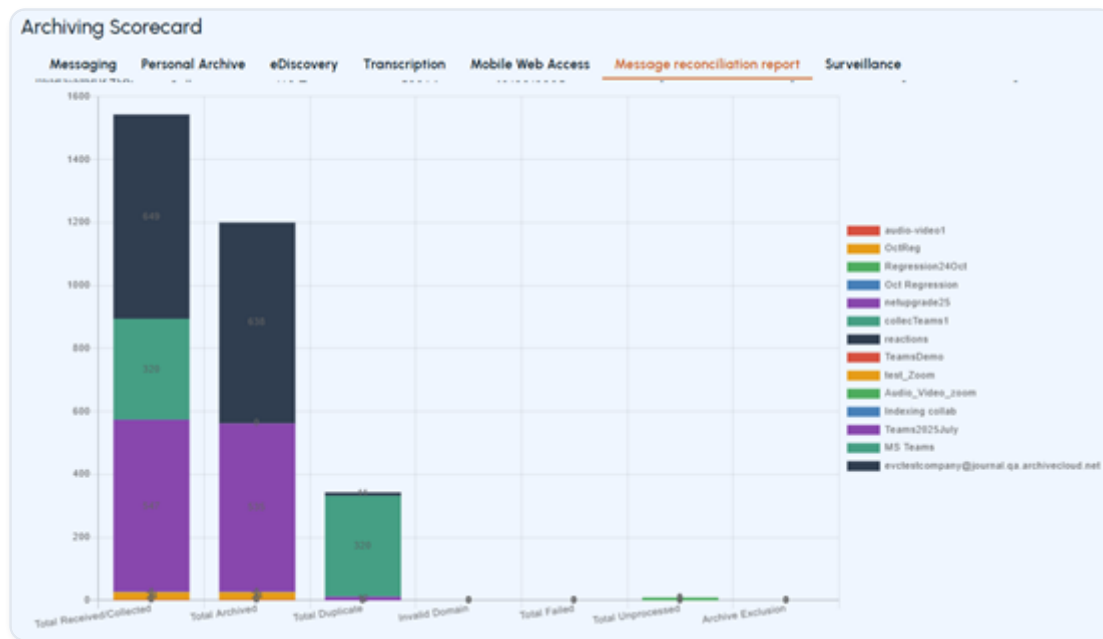
Items per page: 1001 - 56 of 56

Refer to the table below to understand columns and their descriptions.

COLUMN NAME	DESCRIPTION
Identify	Displays the name or identifier of the reconciliation entry.
Type	Displays the type of source configured for reconciliation, such as a collector.
Source	Displays the source system from which the messages were collected.
Session ID	Displays the unique identifier of the reconciliation session.
Run Date	Displays the date on which the reconciliation process was run.
Source Reconcile Count	Note: This column is not available for all users. If you want to get this functionality, contact your system administrator or Arctera Support. Displays the total number of messages that the source system (such as Exchange, Gmail, Office 365, and so on) reports as sent or collected during reconciliation. Displays N/A if the source count is unavailable.
Source Individual Messages	Note: This column is not available for all users. If you want to get this functionality, contact your system administrator or Arctera Support. Displays the number of individual or unique messages reported by the source system, excluding messages represented as

COLUMN NAME	DESCRIPTION
	part of a batch or group. Displays N/A if the individual message count is unavailable.
Total Received/Collected	Displays the total number of messages received or collected from the source system.
Total Archived	Displays the total number of messages successfully archived.
Total Duplicate	Displays the total number of messages identified as duplicates.
Invalid Domain	Displays the total number of messages associated with an invalid domain.
Total Failed	Displays the total number of messages that failed during processing or archival.
Total Unprocessed	Displays the total number of messages that were received but not processed.
Archive Exclusion	Displays the total number of messages excluded from archival.
Skipped User	Displays the total number of messages skipped because of user-related conditions.

Reconciliation data in graphical format



- To download the report, click the **Download** icon (provided near the **Journal Addresses** drop-down list), and then select either PDF or CSV as the format.

Generating an Arctera Surveillance specific Report

You can generate the Account Mapping report for Arctera Surveillance.

To generate the Account Mapping report for Arctera Surveillance:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Reports**
- On the **Archiving Scorecard** page, select the **Surveillance** tab.
- In the top-right corner of the page, select the **Account Mapping** option for which you want to generate a report.
- Provide the Email address, RepID, and last name of the account holder in the respective fields.
- Click **Apply**
- If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
- To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format., click the **Export** icon.

See [About Arctera Unified Platform reports and notifications](#).

Usage

The Usage Scorecard provides the following options in a tabbed layout.

TABS	DESCRIPTION
Service Usage	This tab lets you get the report based on date range and interval. You can run and export reports based on the following: • User statistics: The number of user(s) that are enabled and disabled. • Personal Archive: The number of Personal Archive User(s) enabled and quota (minimum license count). • eDiscovery: The number of eDiscovery Archive User(s) enabled and quota (minimum license count). • Folder Synchronization (Vault Solution): The number of Folder Sync User(s) enabled and quota (minimum license count). • Folder Synchronization (Archive): The number of archives. • Email Continuity: The number of Email Continuity User(s) enabled and quota (minimum license count). Note: Data can take up to 24 hours to refresh once you've enabled or disabled mailboxes.
Mailbox Statistics	This tab lets you see the number of mailboxes that are added, deleted, enabled, and disabled. • MailBoxes Added/Deleted. The number of mailboxes that are added or deleted for a group. Note: Deleted mailboxes - only consist of the mailboxes that are deleted from the Management console, not by other operations team (submitted through a support ticket). • MailBoxes Enabled/Disabled The number of mailboxes that are enabled or disabled for a group. Note: Data can take up to 24 hours to refresh once you've enabled or disabled mailboxes.
Archived Message Size	This tab lets you view the following details: • GB archived - view total size in GB and count of the messages that are archived for a group. • GB archived per account - view total size in GB and count of the messages that are archived per account. Note: Data can take up to 24 hours to refresh. This report displays the size

TABS	DESCRIPTION
	and count of items that were archive, it does not reflect deleted items.
Capacity Trend	See Generating a capacity trend report
Transcription Trend	See Generating a transcription trend report
AI Units Trend	See Generating an AI units trend report
AI Wallet Statement	See Generating the AI Wallet Statement

Generating a service usage report

The Service Usage tab provides service usage reports based on date range and interval. You can run and export reports based on the following services.

Note: Data can take up to 24 hours to refresh once you have enabled or disabled mailboxes.

- **User Statistics:** Generates a report showing the number of enabled and disabled users. Additionally, it displays a horizontal red line indicating the number of licenses purchased by the customer. Active users above this red line are considered overage (additional active users).

This report alerts customers to consider purchasing more licenses or to begin paying for the additional users.

- **Personal Archive:** Generates a report for the number of Personal Archive User(s) enabled and quota (minimum license count).
- **Discovery Archive:** Generates a report for the number of Discovery Archive User(s) enabled and quota (minimum license count).
- **Folder Synchronization (Vault Solution):** Generates a report for the number of Folder Sync User(s) enabled and quota (minimum license count) for Vault Solution.
- **Folder Synchronization (Arctera Unified Platform):** Generates a report for the number of Folder Sync User(s) enabled and quota (minimum license count) for Arctera Unified Platform.
- **Email Continuity:** Generates a report for the number of Email Continuity User(s) enabled and quota (minimum license count).

To generate a service usage report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Usage**
2. On the **User Scorecard** page, select the **Service Usage** tab.
3. In the top-right corner of the page, select the any of the above-mentioned services for which you want to generate a user report.
4. Select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
5. Select the predefined frequency (Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, or Yearly.)
6. Click **Apply**
7. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
8. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format., click the **Export** icon.

Generating a mailbox statistics report

The Mailbox Statistics tab provides reports for the number of mailboxes that are added and deleted, and enabled and disabled. You can run and export reports based on the following services.

Note: Data can take up to 24 hours to refresh once you've enabled or disabled mailboxes.

- Mailboxes Added/Deleted: Generates a report for the number of mailboxes that are added or deleted for a group.
- Mailboxes Enabled/Disabled: Generates a report for the number of mailboxes that are enabled and disabled.

To generate a service usage report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Usage**
2. On the **User Scorecard** page, select the **Mailbox Statistics** tab.
3. In the top-right corner of the page, select the any of the above-mentioned services for which you want to generate a report.
4. Select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
5. Select the predefined frequency (Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, or Yearly.)
6. Click **Apply**

7. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
8. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format., click the **Export** icon.

Generating an archived message size report

The Archived Message Size tab provides reports for the total archive size in GB and GB archived per account. You can run and export reports based on the following parameters.

Note: Data can take up to 24 hours to refresh once you've enabled or disabled mailboxes.

- GB archived: Generates a report to display total size in GB and count of the messages that are archived for a group.
- GB archived per account: Generates a report to display total size in GB and count of the messages that are archived per account.

To generate a service usage report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Usage**
2. On the **User Scorecard** page, select the **Archived Message Size** tab.
3. In the top-right corner of the page, select the any of the above-mentioned services for which you want to generate a report.
4. Select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
5. Select the predefined frequency (Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, or Yearly.)
6. Click **Apply**
7. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
8. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format., click the **Export** icon.

Generating a capacity trend report

While adding a customer or a partner profile in Management Console, the administrator specifies the number of licenses, with a default storage limit of 15 GB per license. For instance, provisioning 10 licenses results in a default storage capacity of 150 GB. Additionally, the administrator can allocate a requested amount of storage to customers and their partners.

Although the overall storage capacity usage can be checked during the editing of customer or partner profiles, situations may arise where they utilize either less or more than the allocated storage, potentially impacting them financially through overage charges. Consequently, customers or partners may seek a report to make decisions regarding their storage capacity.

The Capacity Trend report provides the allowed and consumed storage capacity details for customers or their partners in graphical or chart format. This report helps customers or their partners understand their proximity to the licensed (allowed) and actually used storage limit. By reviewing this report, they can proactively make decisions, such as acquiring extra storage or receiving advance notifications to prevent overage charges.

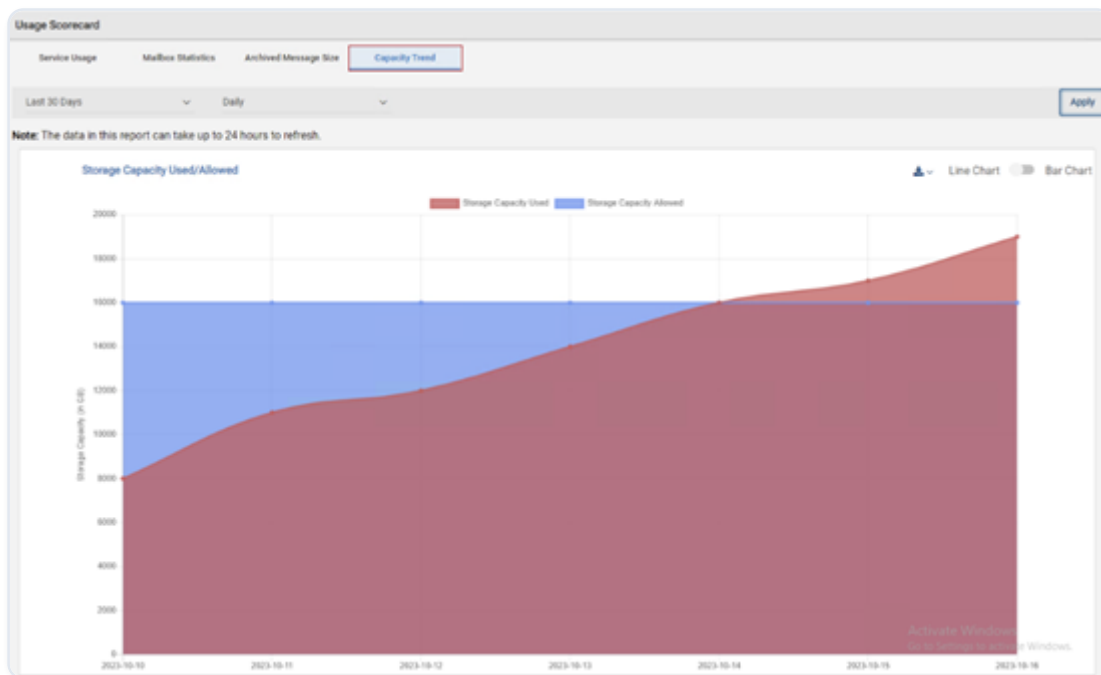
The Capacity Trend tab provides a storage capacity trend report based on date range and frequency. You can run and export reports based on the following services.

Note: Data can take up to 24 hours to refresh once you've enabled or disabled mailboxes.

To generate a storage capacity trend report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Usage**
2. On the **User Scorecard** page, select the **Capacity Trend** tab.
3. Select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
4. Select the predefined frequency (Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, or Yearly.)
5. Click **Apply**

The application generates a report indicating the licensed (allowed) and actually utilized storage limit by the customer or their partners, as shown in the sample image below.



6. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
7. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format, click the **Export** icon.

Generating a transcription trend report

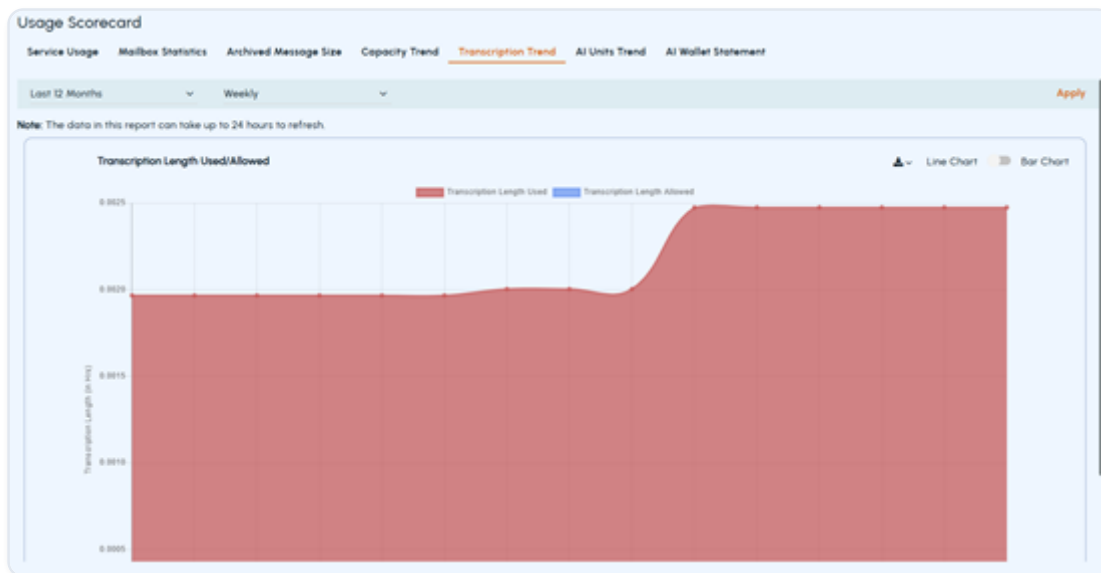
The Transcription Trend report provides the allowed and consumed transcription length (in hours) details for customers or their partners in graphical or chart format. This report helps customers or their partners understand their proximity to the licensed (allowed) and actually used transcription limit. By reviewing this report, they can proactively make decisions.

Note: Data can take up to 24 hours to refresh once you've enabled or disabled mailboxes.

To generate a transcription trend report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Usage**
2. On the **User Scorecard** page, select the **Transcription Trend** tab.
3. Select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
4. Select the predefined frequency (Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, or Yearly.)
5. Click **Apply**

The application generates a report indicating the licensed (allowed) and actually utilized transcription limit by the customer or their partners, as shown in the sample image below.



6. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
7. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format, click the **Export** icon.

Generating an AI units trend report

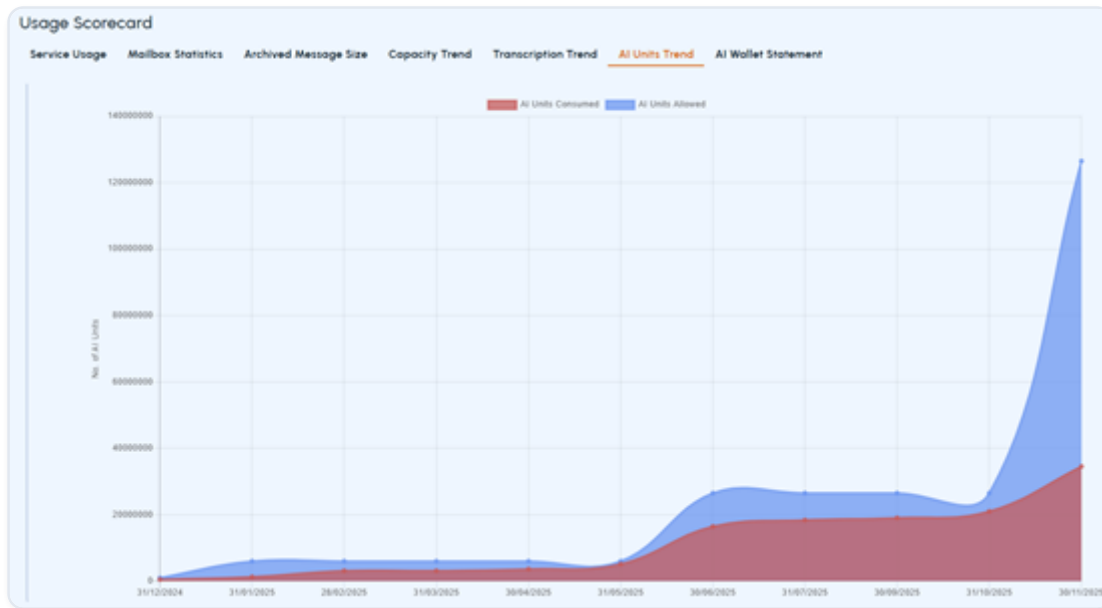
The AI Units Trend report provides the allowed and consumed AI unit details for customers or their partners in graphical or chart format. This report helps customers or their partners understand their proximity to the licensed (allowed) and actually used AI Units limit. By reviewing this report, they can proactively make decisions.

Note: Data can take up to 24 hours to refresh once you've enabled or disabled mailboxes.

To generate a AI units trend report:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Usage**
2. On the **User Scorecard** page, select the **AI Units Trend** tab.
3. Select a predefined duration, or select **Custom** if you want to specify a start and end date for the report.
4. Select the predefined frequency (Daily, Weekly, Monthly, Quarterly, or Yearly.)
5. Click **Apply**

The application generates a report indicating the licensed (allowed) and actually utilized AI Units limit by the customer or their partners, as shown in the sample image below.



6. If required, switch between the **Line Chart** and **Bar Chart** display options to view chart in the report.
7. To export the report in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format, click the **Export** icon.

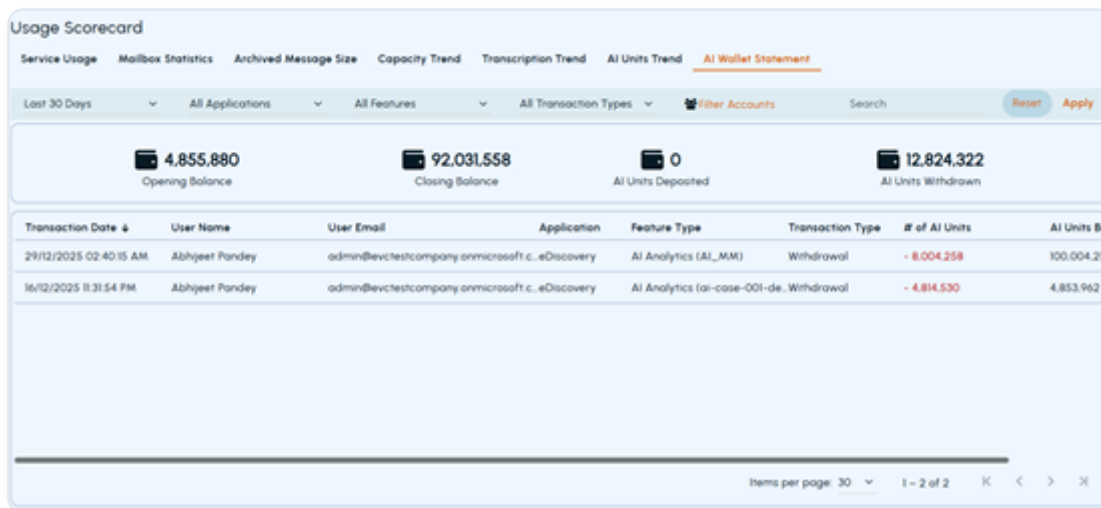
Generating the AI Wallet Statement

As an administrator, you can generate an AI wallet statement to track AI unit consumption by applications and their associated features. Each recorded transaction can be traced to a specific user account for review.

To generate the AI wallet statement:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications**
2. Access the **Usage** tab.
3. On the **Usage Scorecard** page, select the **AI Wallet Statement** tab.

By default, the page shows a 30-day summary of AI unit consumption by all applications, features, and associated user accounts.



4. To view the specific record, do the following:

DURATION	SELECT THE PERIOD FOR WHICH YOU WANT TO VIEW AI UNIT CONSUMPTION.
All Applications	Select the application for which you want to view AI unit consumption.
All Features	Select all or a specific feature of the selected application.
All Transaction Types	Select All or choose a specific transaction type to view only deposited or only withdrawn AI units.
Filter Accounts	Click to open the Add/Remove Accounts pop-up, and then select the required user accounts.
Search field	Enter keywords to filter the records by user name or email.

Note: If required, click **Reset** to clear the selected filters and apply new filter selections.

5. Click **Apply** to view the record based on the selected filters.

Scenario: To view AI unit consumption by the **AI Analytics** feature of the Arctera eDiscovery application

a. From the application drop-down list, select **eDiscovery**.

- b. From the features drop-down list, select **AI Analytics**.
- c. Select a specific user account if required.
- d. Click **Apply** to review the AI units transactions.

Logs

This section describes procedures to generate various log reports in Arctera Management Console.

Viewing the Activity Log

The Activity Log displays all events that occur in Arctera Unified Platform including user logins, password resets, and user role changes. From the Activity Log page, you can view the full log or filter the log by date range, user name, events, or event details.

To view the Activity Log:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Logs**
2. Select the **Activity Log** tab.
3. If required, filter the log using the following criteria:
 - **From Date/To Date** — filter the log by entering a date range.
 - **Detail Substring** — filter the log by entering event detail keywords such as success or failure.
 - **User** — filter the log by entering a user name or email address.
 - **Event** — filter the log by selecting a specific event type.
4. Click **Search** The resulting **Activity Log** report appears, displaying logs/events for added or removed roles and permissions in both built-in and custom roles, along with a user who modified the permissions, users who are modified for which roles and permissions, and date/time of modification.

The **Activity Log** provides detailed logs for events when a user's built-in role is changed during a bulk account import, including which role has been assigned or unassigned, which user made the changes, and the event date and time.

Activity Log

Event
Everything

Search

Timestamp	Modified by User	Modified User	Event	IP Address	Details
Oct 9, 24 12:14:00 AM	devadmin@liveoffice.com		Customer Administration Role Edit		Privilege -View Distributor Portal added to Role - CS_custoRole
Oct 9, 24 12:14:00 AM	devadmin@liveoffice.com		Customer Administration Role Edit		Privilege -View Reseller Portal removed from Role -CS_custoRole
Oct 9, 24 12:13:00 AM	devadmin@liveoffice.com	btest2-Disabled_On_May 29 2024 6:09AM@liveoffice.com	User's Role Edit		New_Role_02_Edit role is unassigned
Oct 9, 24 12:13:00 AM	devadmin@liveoffice.com	btest2-Disabled_On_May 29 2024 6:09AM@liveoffice.com	User's Role Edit		Archive Collections Manager role is unassigned

Note: The report does not display the private IP addresses of events that the Arctera Unified Platform services have logged. Instead the IP Address column displays Internal Service.

- To export the log in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format, click the **Export** icon.

Viewing the Message Log

The Message Log displays information about the archived messages in Arctera Unified Platform. From the Message Log page, you can view the full log or filter the log by date range, message sender, message recipient, or subject.

To view the Message Log:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Logs**
- Select the **Message Log** tab.
- If required, filter the log using the following criteria:
 - From Date/To Date** — filter the log by entering a date range.
 - Sender** — filter the log by entering the message sender email address.
 - Recipient** — filter the log by entering the message recipient email address.
 - Subject** — filter the log by entering message subject keywords.
 - Has Attachment** — filter the log by selecting **Yes** for messages with attachments or **No** for messages without attachments.
- Click **Search**
- To export the log in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format, click the **Export** icon.

Viewing the Usage Log

The Usage Log displays information about Arctera Unified Platform usage. You can view the following information:

- The total number of messages that have been archived.
- The number of new messages that have been archived in the last 24 hours.
- The average number of messages that are archived each day.
- The average size of messages that have been archived.
- The total storage that has been used for archiving messages.

To view the Usage Log:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Reports and Notifications>Logs**
2. Select the **Usage Log** tab.
3. To export the log in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format, click the **Export** icon.

Creating a Retention Log Report

A Retention Log Report displays usage information for retention policies. You can create a report with the full log. You can also filter the log by date range, user name, action type, or policy name.

To create a Retention Log Report:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Reports and Notifications>Logs**
2. Select the **Retention Log** tab.
3. If required, filter the log using the following criteria:
 - **From Date/To Date** — filter the log by entering a date range.
 - **User Name** — filter the log by entering a user name.
 - **Action Type** — filter the log by selecting a specific type of action.
 - **Policy Name** — filter the log by entering the name of a retention policy.
4. Click **Search**
5. To export the log in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format, click the **Export** icon.

Viewing the Mobile Browser Log

The Mobile Browser Log displays information about Arctera Personal Archiving Mobile Web Access usage. You can view the full log or filter the log by date range.

To view the Mobile Browser Log:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Reports and Notifications>Logs**
2. Select the **Mobile Browser Log** tab.
3. If required, filter the log by date range using the **From Date** and **To Date** fields.
4. Click **Search**
5. To export the log in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format, click the **Export** icon.

Viewing the Personal Browser Log

The Personal Browser Log displays information about Arctera Personal Archive usage. From the Personal Browser Log tab, you can view the full log or filter the log by date range.

To view the Personal Browser Log:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Reports and Notifications**
2. Select the **Personal Browser Log** tab.
3. If required, filter the log by date range using the **From Date** and **To Date** fields.
4. Click **Search**
5. If required, click **Export** icon to export the log in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format.

Viewing the Discovery Browser Log

The Discovery Browser Log displays information about Arctera eDiscovery usage. You can view the full log or filter the log by the date range.

To view the Discovery Browser Log:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Reports and Notifications>Logs**
2. Select the **Discovery Browser Log** tab.
3. If required, filter the log by date range using the **From Date** and **To Date** fields.
4. Click **Search**
5. To export the log in EXCEL, PDF, CSV, or WORD format, click the **Export** icon.

Subscribing to receive SIEM/SOAR Logs

The SIEM/SOAR Logs feature allows customers to retrieve all logs and transfer them to other tools, such as *Splunk*, for further processing.

To receive SIEM/SOAR Logs, customers need to contact Arctera Support and request enabling the SIEM/SOAR Log shipping service for their environment. Customers must specify which of the following storage options they require:

- AWS
- Microsoft Azure
- SFTP

This service collects the following details:

- Search logs from the Arctera Management Console
- Message logs, Activity logs, and Browser logs (including Mobile Browser, Discovery Browser, and Personal Browser) from the Arctera eDiscovery portal

The SIEM/SOAR service identifies the collected logs by their name and creation date, and generates a separate CSV file for each log. If the customer has subscribed to this service, these CSV files are securely uploaded to their storage managed by the customer. The service employs the following components:

- APIs provided by Amazon/Microsoft Azure/SFTP for uploading the CSV files.
- Advanced Encryption Standard (AES-256) for secured data transmission. Each object is encrypted with a unique data key, providing additional protection for the data.

Refer to the following knowledge base article to see sample [SIEM/SOAR sample log reports](#) in CSV format.

Note: To ensure seamless and secured data transmission, customers are recommended to set up the necessary firewall rules to accomplish secure data upload to their storage of choice

Notifications

The Notifications node is visible only when you are logged in with the System Administrator role. Only users with this role can enable or disable usage, capacity, and retention-specific notifications.

This section describes how to configure notification-specific parameters in the Arctera Management Console.

Usage Notification

This feature allows system administrators to monitor active archive usage and committed capacity usage. By configuring this feature, administrators can proactively manage active archive usage and committed capacity overage.

As a system administrator, you can configure this feature by performing the following actions:

- Enable notifications
- Set notification threshold
- Set notification frequency
- Manage recipients who will receive notifications
- Track the history of configuration changes

See [Configuring the usage notifications feature](#).

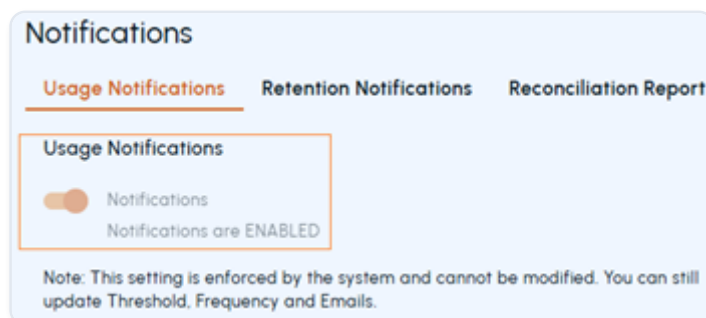
Note: Users are notified when either the active archive usage or the committed capacity usage exceeds the configured threshold.

Configuring the usage notifications feature

To configure the usage notifications feature:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Notifications**
2. Select the **Usage Notifications** tab, and click **Edit**
3. **Enable notifications**

To enable notifications, slide the switch to the right.



Note: After this feature is enabled, it cannot be disabled. The restriction is enforced at the system level to ensure continued compliance and operational awareness. Critical alerts remain active so administrators are always aware of capacity risks. However, administrators can adjust the thresholds and frequency at any time.

4. Set notification threshold

In the *Notify if committed usage exceeds* field, select the desired threshold percentage (for example 80%) from the predefined values.

Usage Notification Threshold

Notify if commit usage exceeds:

5. Set notification frequency

Select one of the following intervals:

Notification Frequency

Note: Notification email will be generated at 9am of first working day of selected frequency period in Default Company Timezone.

☐ Quarterly
☐ Monthly
☒ Weekly
☐ Daily

Note: The automatic notification frequency is set to Daily if the committed usage reaches or exceeds 100%.

- **Quarterly** — Notifications are sent on the first Monday of each quarter. The quarters start in January, April, July, and October.
- **Monthly** — Notifications are sent on the first Monday of each month.
- **Weekly** — Notifications are sent every Monday. This setting is the default frequency.
- **Daily** — Notifications are sent every day.

Note: Notification emails are sent at 9:00 A.M. in the default company time zone. If committed usage reaches or exceeds 100%, the notification frequency is automatically set to Daily.

6. Manage recipients

Under **Notification Emails** , do the following as needed:

Notification Emails (8)

Enter Email Add

Email Address	Date	
adeleV@evctestcompany.on...	26/09/2025	⊖
admin@123.com	26/09/2025	⊖
admin@evctestcompany.co...	26/09/2025	⊖
admin@evctestcompany.on...	26/09/2025	⊖

- To add an address, enter the email address and click **Add**.
- To remove an email address, select the email address and click the **Remove** icon in the corresponding row.

7. Track the history of configuration changes

This is a read-only section. You can monitor the logs such as who made changes, when they were made, and what updates were applied.

History

Date: 22/08/2025 10:29:00 AM User: Abhijeet Event: BillingUsageNotificationsEdit Notification: Enabled
Date: 25/07/2025 09:41:00 PM User: Abhijeet Event: BillingUsageNotificationsEdit Notification: Disabled
Date: 21/07/2025 07:28:00 PM User: Abhijeet Event: BillingUsageNotificationsEdit Notification Emails Removed (1): • admin@qx5r.onmicrosoft.com

8. Click **Save**

Retention Notifications

The system administrator can enable or disable this feature to configure retention batch notification settings for designated retention administrators and additional recipient email addresses.

The list of *Retention Administrators* appears as their email addresses. As a system administrator, you can set these retention administrators to *active* or *inactive* state. When set to active, a retention administrator receives retention batch notifications at the listed email address. When set to inactive, the retention administrator does not receive notifications.

Administrators can also add additional recipient email addresses, including third-party addresses that are not associated with customer accounts. These additional recipients can also receive retention batch notifications.

Notification frequency is fixed to Daily and cannot be customized. A History section displays a chronological record of configuration changes for audit and tracking purposes.

More Information

[Enabling or disabling retention notifications](#)

[Adding or excluding email addresses for retention notifications](#)

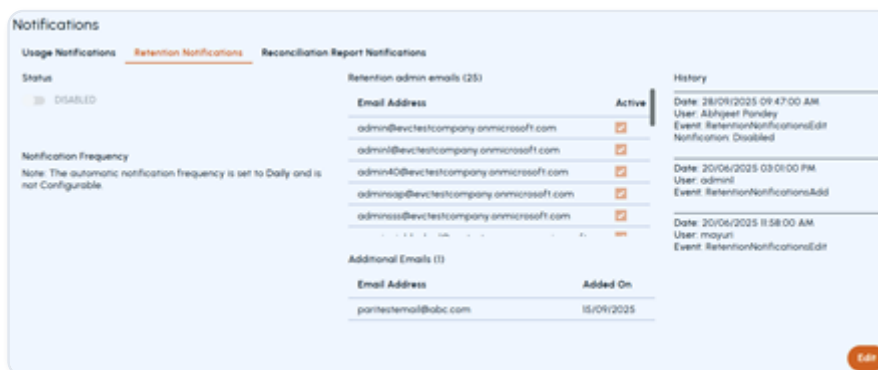
[Viewing retention notification configuration history](#)

Enabling or disabling retention notifications

Only users with the *System Administrator* role can enable or disable retention batch notification setting.

To enable or disable retention batch notifications:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Notifications**
2. Select the **Retention Notifications** tab, and click **Edit**



3. Under **Status**, slide the switch to the right to enable, or to the left to disable retention batch notification setting.

Notifications

Usage Notifications **Retention Notifications** Reconciliation Report Notifications

Status
☒ **ENABLED**

Notification Frequency
 Note: The automatic notification frequency is set to Daily and is not Configurable.

Retention admin emails (25)

Email Address	Active
admin@evctestcompany.onmicrosoft.com	☒
admin1@evctestcompany.onmicrosoft.com	☒
admin40@evctestcompany.onmicrosoft.com	☒
adminsap@evctestcompany.onmicrosoft.com	☒

Additional Emails (1)

Enter Email **Add**

Email Address	Added On
---------------	----------

- Click **Save** See [Adding or excluding email addresses for retention notifications](#).

See [Viewing retention notification configuration history](#).

Adding or excluding email addresses for retention notifications

System administrator email addresses are automatically included in the notification recipient list and can be activated or deactivated as needed. You can add up to 50 additional email addresses.

Retention administrators on the customer side can now enable retention notifications and manage recipient email addresses directly through the management console, eliminating the need for support team intervention.

To add or remove email addresses for retention notifications:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Notifications**
- Select the **Retention Notifications** tab, and click **Edit**
- Under **Retention Admin Emails**, the system automatically populates the email addresses of all existing administrators and users assigned retention-related roles.

To prevent a specific address from receiving notifications, clear the **Active** check box for that entry.

- To add recipients who are not assigned retention roles, enter their email addresses under **Additional Emails** and click **Add**. These addresses can include external or third-party addresses that are not associated with customer accounts.
- Click **Save** See [Enabling or disabling retention notifications](#).

See [Viewing retention notification configuration history](#).

Viewing retention notification configuration history

The History section displays a chronological record of configuration changes to the retention notification settings for audit and tracking purposes. Each entry logs the date and time, user, event

type, notification status (enabled or disabled), selected notification frequency, and any added or removed email addresses. Refer to the sample screen shot below:

History	
Date: 28/09/2025 09:47:00 AM	User: Abhijeet
Event: RetentionNotificationsEdit	
Notification: Disabled	
Date: 20/06/2025 03:01:00 PM	User: admin1
Event: RetentionNotificationsAdd	
Date: 20/06/2025 11:58:00 AM	User: mayuri
Event: RetentionNotificationsEdit	

This audit trail helps administrators track who made changes, when the changes occurred, and what specific updates were applied to the retention notification configuration.

Reconciliation Report Notifications

The system administrator can enable or disable this feature to control user access to the Message reconciliation report tab on the *Archiving Scorecard* page under *Reports and Notifications > Reports*.

Only users for whom this feature is enabled can generate, view, and download reconciliation reports. The message reconciliation report provides users with a real-time insight into message flow and reconciliation metrics, enhancing their operational control and efficiency through direct data access.

Users for whom this feature is disabled cannot access or use reconciliation reports.

Notification frequency is fixed to Daily and cannot be customized. Reports are retained for 30 days to serve as a short-term historical reference.

Users can view the notification history on the Reconciliation Report Notifications page as shown in the sample image below:

Notifications

Usage Notifications Retention Notifications **Reconciliation Report Notifications** Capture Notifications

Status

☒ ENABLED

Notification Frequency

Note: The automatic notification frequency is set to Daily and is not configurable. Once enabled, a consolidated report will be available on the archiving scorecard page.

☐ Quarterly
☐ Monthly
☐ Weekly
☒ Daily

Notification emails (5)

Email Address
email1766131959@dom.com
email1766336839@dom.com
email1766557186@dom.com
email1766736475@dom.com
email1766994411@dom.com

History

Date: 29/12/2025 08:48:00 PM User: Abhijeet Pandey Event: ReconciliationReportNotificationAdd Notification Emails Added (1): - email1766994411@dom.com
Date: 26/12/2025 09:09:00 PM User: Abhijeet Pandey Event: ReconciliationReportNotificationAdd Notification Emails Added (1): - email1766736475@dom.com
Date: 24/12/2025 07:21:00 PM User: Abhijeet Pandey Event: ReconciliationReportNotificationAdd Notification Emails Added (1): - email1766557186@dom.com

Edit

More Information

Enabling or disabling reconciliation report notifications

Adding or removing email addresses for reconciliation report notifications

Enabling or disabling reconciliation report notifications

Only users with the *System Administrator* role can enable or disable reconciliation report notifications setting.

To enable or disable reconciliation report notifications:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Notifications**
2. Select the **Reconciliation Report Notifications** tab, and click **Edit**

Notifications

Usage Notifications Retention Notifications **Reconciliation Report Notifications** Capture Notifications

Status

☒ ENABLED

Notification Frequency

Note: The automatic notification frequency is set to Daily and is not configurable. Once enabled, a consolidated report will be available on the archiving scorecard page.

☐ Quarterly
☐ Monthly
☐ Weekly
☒ Daily

Notification emails (5)

Email Address
email1766131959@dom.com
email1766336839@dom.com
email1766557186@dom.com
email1766736475@dom.com
email1766994411@dom.com

History

Date: 29/12/2025 08:48:00 PM User: Abhijeet Pandey Event: ReconciliationReportNotificationAdd Notification Emails Added (1): - email1766994411@dom.com
Date: 26/12/2025 09:09:00 PM User: Abhijeet Pandey Event: ReconciliationReportNotificationAdd Notification Emails Added (1): - email1766736475@dom.com
Date: 24/12/2025 07:21:00 PM User: Abhijeet Pandey Event: ReconciliationReportNotificationAdd Notification Emails Added (1): - email1766557186@dom.com

Edit

3. Under **Status** , slide the switch to the right to enable, or to the left to disable the setting.

Notifications

Usage Notifications Retention Notifications **Reconciliation Report Notifications** Capture Notifications

Status
☐ **DISABLED**

Notification Frequency
 Note: The automatic notification frequency is set to Daily and is not configurable. Once enabled, a consolidated report will be available on the archiving scorecard page.
☐ Quarterly
☐ Monthly
☐ Weekly
☒ **Daily**

Notification emails (5)
 Enter Email

Email Address
email1766131959@dom.com
email1766336839@dom.com
email1766557186@dom.com
email1766736475@dom.com
email1766994411@dom.com

4. Click **Save** See [Adding or excluding email addresses for retention notifications](#).

Adding or removing email addresses for reconciliation report notifications

Administrators on the customer side can now enable reconciliation report notifications and manage recipient email addresses directly through the management console, eliminating the need for support team intervention.

To add or remove email addresses for reconciliation report notifications:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Notifications**
2. Select the **Reconciliation Report Notifications** tab, and click **Edit**
3. Under **Notification emails** , do the following as needed:

Notifications

Usage Notifications Retention Notifications **Reconciliation Report Notifications**

Status
☒ **ENABLED**

Notification Frequency
 Note: The automatic notification frequency is set to Daily and is not Configurable. Once enabled, a consolidated report will be available on the Archiving Scorecard page.
☐ Quarterly
☐ Monthly
☐ Weekly
☒ **Daily**

Notification emails (6)
 Enter Email Add

Email Address	Status
admin@evctestcompany.onmicrosoft.com	☐
Admin@sample.com	☐
admin@evctestcompany.onmicrosoft1.com	☐

Cancel Save

- To add an address, enter the email address and click **Add**.
 - To remove an email address, select the email address and click the **Remove** icon in the corresponding row.
4. Click **Save** More Information

Enabling or disabling reconciliation report notifications

Capture Notifications

The Capture Notifications tab allows system administrators to configure the Arctera Capture-specific notification preferences and view related event notifications in the Management Console.

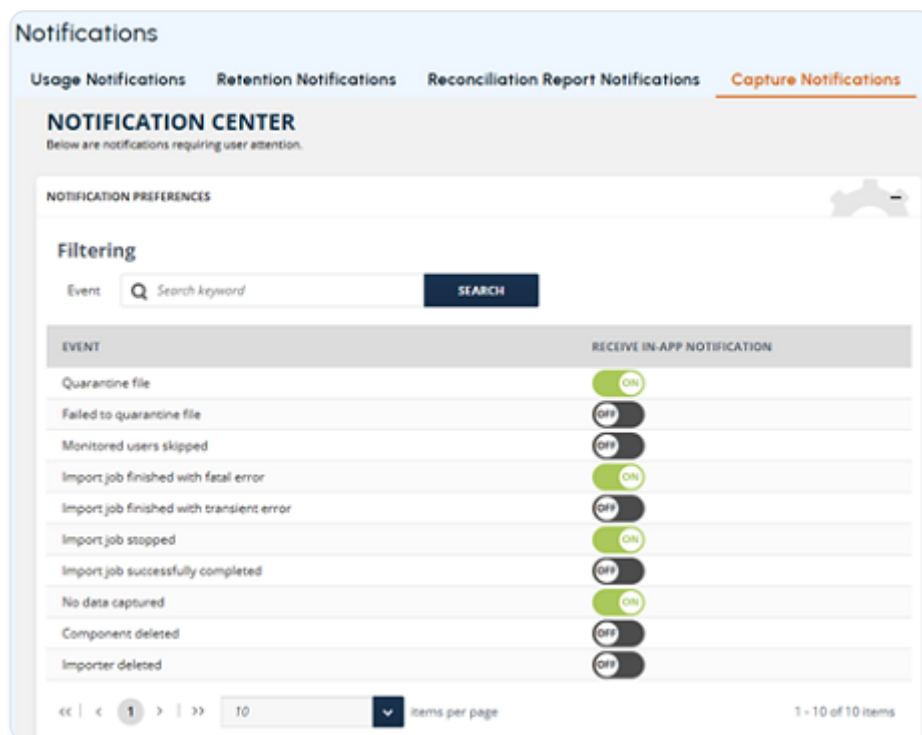
This tab is available under Reports > Notifications only if any of the following services is enabled:

- Capture Primary Service
- OneDrive for Business
- Microsoft Teams Secondary Service

To view the Arctera Capture-specific notifications:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Notifications**, and access the **Capture Notifications** tab.
2. Configure the notification preferences.

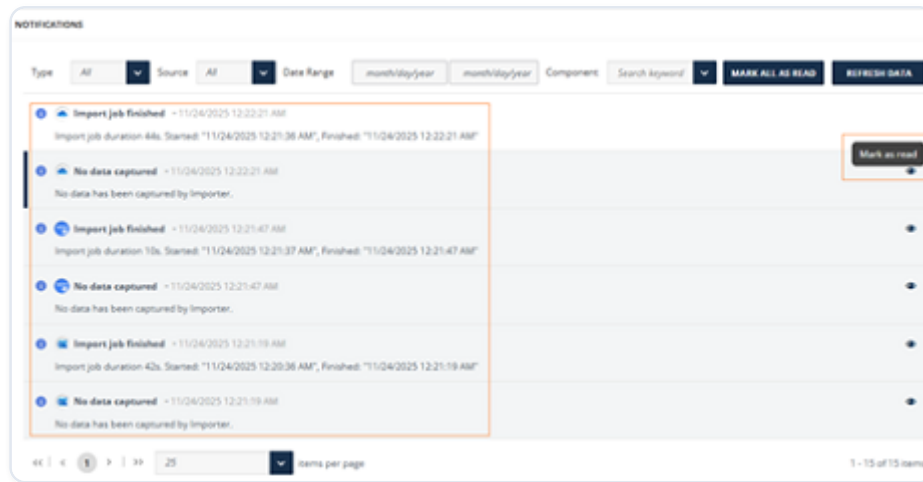
On the NOTIFICATION CENTER page, expand the NOTIFICATION PREFERENCES section by clicking the plus (+) icon or the section header. The list of available events is displayed.



3. To find a specific event, use the navigation arrows to move between pages, or enter a keyword in the **Event** field and click **Search**
4. For the searched event, use the *Receive In-App Notification* toggle. Turn **ON** to enable notifications for the event, turn **OFF** to disable it. Repeat the steps to configure notification preferences for additional events as and when needed.

- After enabling the required events, scroll down to view the **NOTIFICATIONS** section.

The system displays notifications based on the configured event preferences as shown in the sample image below.



- Click **Refresh Data** to load the latest notifications.
- If the list is extensive, use the available filters to refine the results. You can sort notifications by **Status**(Read, Unread, Failure, Warning, Info, Success), **Source**(System, Importer), **Component**, or **** time period****. Use navigation arrows to move between the pages.
- To mark all displayed notifications as read, click **MARK ALL AS READ**. To mark individual notification as read, click the eye icon next to a notification.

Capture

The Capture node is visible under the *Reports and Notifications* node only if:

- your user account is enabled for the Arctera Capture services.
- your role is Archive Administrator or System Administrator.

For more information, See [Generating Arctera Capture-specific reports](#).

Generating Arctera Capture-specific reports

To generate Arctera Capture-specific reports from the Arctera Management Console:

- In the left navigation pane, select **Reports and Notifications>Arctera Capture** The Management Console opens the **REPORTS** page interface of the Arctera Capture application in the same window.

2. Specify the **Report type** The **REPORTS** interface varies with the selected reports. For example, in the image below the **ACTIONS** button is available, while in the next interface, the **EXPORT PDF** and **EXPORT CSV** buttons are available.

REPORTS

Report type: *Missing Attachment F...* **Importer**: *test_dav3_collector* **ACTIONS**

MESSAGE ID	FAILURE REASON
No items to display	

REPORTS

Report type: *tt* **Importer**: *tt* **EXPORT PDF** **EXPORT CSV**

NAME	CORP EMAIL ADDRESS	MONITORED
No items to display		

3. Select the **Importer** for which you want to generate a report.
4. Click **ACTIONS**. On the **REPROCESSING OPTIONS** window, select the skip, delete, or force processing option as needed, and click **APPLY**

REPROCESSING OPTIONS X

☐ Retry processing
☒ Force processing
☐ Delete failed messages
☐ Skip

CLOSE **APPLY**

Or, click **EXPORT PDF/EXPORT CSV** to export a report as PDF or CSV.

For more information about the Arctera Capture reports, see [Arctera Capture Configuration Guide](#).

Classification

This section includes the following topics:

- [About classification](#)
- [Which emails get classified?](#)
- [Steps for setting up classification](#)
- [Accessing the Arctera Classification](#)
- [Arctera Unified Platform item properties for use in custom classification policies](#)

About classification

With the continuous growth of unstructured data in the business environment, taking decisions to archive and delete content of business or legal value is a challenge. You can simplify data management decisions by categorizing and organizing data based on classification policies.

If your company has the Arctera Classification service enabled, the service can apply classification tags to Arctera Unified Platform's incoming emails that match the enabled policies in the Arctera Classification. Arctera eDiscovery users can then search for the emails that are tagged with the classification tags, during investigations and Arctera eDiscovery.

Administrators with the classification administrator role can access the Arctera Classification from Arctera Management Console, to enable the policies that your organization wants to use. Each policy specifies the conditions that an email must meet to be assigned one or more related classification tags. The built-in policies address many of the regulatory requirements and corporate standards for which you may want to classify emails.

For example, you can help meet privacy regulations, including the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR), through the policies that detect personally identifiable information. The Personally Identifiable Information (PII) policies look for content like credit card numbers, email addresses, dates of birth, passport numbers, and driver's license numbers. When an email that is incoming to Arctera Unified Platform matches the criteria for the policy, the associated PII classification tag is assigned in the email header. Arctera eDiscovery reviewers can search for emails with the assigned PII tag. In this way, classification can help to reduce the number of emails to review as part of meeting your organization's regulatory requirements.

For information on how to configure classification policies and classification tags, refer to [Arctera Classification online help](#).

For information on working with the emails that contain classification tags, refer to the [Arctera eDiscovery User Guide](#).

Which emails get classified?

If your company has the Arctera Classification service enabled, the service can apply classification tags to Arctera Unified Platform's incoming emails that match the enabled policies in the Arctera Classification.

Once a policy is enabled in the Arctera Classification, the classification process is performed for the new emails that Arctera Unified Platform ingests. Note that:

- The classification tags that are associated with a policy get applied only to matching emails that are ingested into Arctera Unified Platform after the policy is enabled. Any previously archived emails do not get tagged.
- If the system administrator changes or disables a classification policy, the changes affect the emails that are subsequently ingested into Arctera Unified Platform. The changes are not reflected in the existing archived emails. For example if you disable a previously enabled classification policy, any archived emails that were tagged as a result of matching the policy remain tagged in Arctera Unified Platform.

Note: Classification tags are only assigned through the Arctera Classification. Unlike other types of tag, you cannot assign or remove classification tags manually.

Steps for setting up classification

Table: Process for setting up classification provides the steps for setting up classification of emails that are ingested into Arctera Unified Platform, using the Arctera Classification.

Table: Process for setting up classification

STEP	DESCRIPTION	FURTHER INFORMATION
Step 1	Ensure that the Arctera Classification service is	To enable your organization for classification, contact Arctera Services & Support

STEP	DESCRIPTION	FURTHER INFORMATION
	enabled for your company in Arctera Unified Platform.	
Step 2	Set up the required account access to the Arctera Classification.	Assign the classification administrator role to the required accounts.
		See Understanding and configuring administration roles
Step 3	Access the Arctera Classification.	You can access the Arctera Classification directly from Arctera Management Console.
		See Accessing the Arctera Classification
Step 4	Decide on the classification policies you require, and enable those policies.	See the Arctera Classification help.
	You can create custom policies if required.	See Arctera Unified Platform item properties for use in custom classification policies

Accessing the Arctera Classification

You must possess the Classification Administrator role if you want to access Arctera Classification from Arctera Management Console.

To access the Arctera Classification:

1. In the left navigation pane, click **Classification**. The **Policies** page of the Arctera Classification application appears. The first classification policy in the list is selected by default.

Note: If you click the Classification node again while the Arctera Classification tab is open, the Arctera Classification user interface gets refreshed.

2. Clear the check box of the first policy
3. Search for and select the policies that you want to enable.

For more information about enabling classification policies, refer to [Arctera Classification online help](#).

Arctera Unified Platform item properties for use in custom classification policies

When Arctera Unified Platform indexes an item, it populates the item's metadata properties with information about the item. Some examples of this information include the display name and email address of the message author, the archived date, and the file size of the item.

Indexed items can have a large number of properties, but only a subset is relevant for classification purposes. Arctera Unified Platform passes this subset of properties and their associated values to the Arctera Classification for use in classification. When you create a custom Arctera Classification policy you can enter the names of these properties in the custom date, custom number, or custom string fields, when you define the policy conditions.

Table: Item properties passed to the Arctera Classification lists the item properties that Arctera Unified Platform passes to the Arctera Classification.

Table: Item properties passed to the Arctera Classification

PROPERTY	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
adat	Date	The date on which the item was archived.
audn	String	The display names of the author and, if applicable, of the person on whose behalf the item was sent.
auae	String	The email addresses of the author and, if applicable, of the person on whose behalf the item was sent.
date	Date	The created, sent, received, or archived date.

PROPERTY	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
natc	Number	The number of attachments.
nrpc	Number	The number of recipients (the total of the To, CC, and BCC recipients)
rbdn	String	The display names of the BCC recipients.
rbea	String	The email addresses of the BCC recipients.
rcdn	String	The display names of the CC recipients.
rcea	String	The email addresses of the CC recipients.
rtdn	String	The display names of the To recipients.
rtea	String	The email addresses of the To recipients.
size	Number	The size of the item in KB.
subj	String	The subject or title.

[Table: Attachment properties passed to the Arctera Classification](#) lists the properties of message attachments that Arctera Unified Platform passes to the Arctera Classification.

Table: Attachment properties passed to the Arctera Classification

PROPERTY	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
a_dat	Date	The created, sent, received, or archived date of the attachment.

PROPERTY	TYPE	DESCRIPTION
a_dtyp	String	The data type of the attachment. For example, DOCX, XSLX, or MSG.
a_size	Number	The size of the attachment in KB.
a_subj	String	The file name of the attachment or, if it is a message, the subject.

Note: The classification feature treats attachments as files. So if an attachment is an email message, its sender information and recipient information are not available for classification.

For more information on creating custom classification policies, refer to [Arctera Classification online help](#).

Managing Data Import

This section includes the following topics:

- [About Import Data](#)
- [Importing data into archives](#)

About Import Data

Every company has existing emails, whether located in active user mailboxes, personal stores, document management systems, or other communication libraries. You can consolidate some or all of these legacy email sources into your Archive. This section describes the data import process, explaining how your company's legacy email can be transferred to the Archive correctly-- and in its entirety.

Legacy email refers to data sitting on local archives on desktops or laptops, email storage on servers, or email on backup tapes. By moving your legacy email into the Cloud Archive, you have a complete, living record of your past and present email history.

The legacy email has context, unlike active email that is saved into your Archive via journaling. A journaled message is captured in transit and saved in its original, pristine form, while legacy email may have been altered before it is placed in the Archive. Legacy messages have previously arrived within the user mailbox and may have been copied into a folder, forwarded to other recipients, or otherwise acted on by the user.

Messages may also have metadata fields altered when information is copied into PST files. To capture the additional information of a legacy message, the import process into the Archive is entirely different than the transfer of journal email. During this process, all legacy email contextual elements are preserved.

You can import legacy email into the archive using Arctera Unified Platform Arctera Management Console. You can use the Import Data feature to import items into archives. You can upload items up to 12 GB per calendar year (January 1 to December 31). Over the period of one year, you may choose to upload an item of 12 GB in one go or upload multiple smaller items with a collective size of a maximum of 12 GB.

You need to collect the legacy email in the proper format from your email environment and then send-- either electronically or physically-- to Arctera for import into the archive in the following scenarios:

- If the file that you want to import is larger than 12 GB and less than 20 GB.
- If the file format is .NSF

Guidelines to use the Import Data feature:

- To Import MSG or EML files, It needs to compressed MSG or EML files in ZIP file.

The Quota limit for zip files will be calculated at Import time. So please check content size manually before creating ZIP file.

- PST and ZIP file names should not contain commas. However, special or double-byte characters are allowed.
- PST and ZIP files need to be 12 GB or less in size.
- PST and ZIP files cannot be password protected.
- Run *scanpst.exe* , a utility included with Microsoft® Outlook, to determine if your PST files are corrupt before uploading the data to ensure the ingestion of the PST's into the archive.
- A message size limit of 50 MB is applicable for imported and journaled email messages. Any oversized messages will not be imported. A report is provided for any message that exceeds this limit.
- Non-email items such as drafts, tasks, and calendar entries are not imported. Read receipts and calendar notice acceptances can be imported.

The Import Data feature is available for administrators of those customers for whom the Enable Import Data check-box is selected while creating or updating the customer. The users who have the Import Data privilege can view the Import Data option.

Note: Summary and detailed report for the uploaded PST and ZIP files with the count and size of emails imported is available in the reports section of Manage Archive. .
See [Generating Messaging reports](#).

Importing data into archives

Before you use the Import Data feature, note that:

- The Import Data feature is available for administrators of those customers for whom the Enable Import Data option is selected while creating or updating customer details. The users who have the Import Data privilege can view the Import Data option.
- The yearly quota limit indicator is available that indicates the available data limit for the current year and the consumed limit. The in-progress upload data is considered as a consumed limit. In case of upload failure for upload in-progress files, the data is added back to the available limit within 5 to 10 minutes of the upload failure. (The duration of the yearly quota period is considered from January 1 to December 31.)
- When you consume the data limit you are entitled, you would be notified when you attempt to upload a file.
- Only PST, MSG, and EML files can be imported. To import the MSG and EML files, you must create a ZIP file.
- While uploading a ZIP file, the application does not identify its actual content size. The quota limit changes as per the actual data size imported. It is recommended to check and ensure the actual content size manually while creating a ZIP file. Else, the import batch may fail due to exceeded quota limit.
- You can select and upload multiple PST and ZIP files simultaneously.
- You can select multiple PST files and/or one CSV file. If the CSV file has a valid account mapping, then account IDs automatically populate on the user interface, along with the valid PST file name. Only PST files are displayed on the user interface.
- For PST files, the messages are archived in sender's and recipients' archives by default.
- For PST files, you can archive messages in the PST owner's archive.

In this case, an account must be mapped with the specified email address of the PST owner. If required, create an account for the PST owner's email address in the Arctera Management Console.

To import data into archives:

1. On the Arctera Management Console , in the left navigation pane, click **Import Data**

Note: You must launch Import Data from the Arctera Management Console . Never use a direct URL of Import Data.

If you have uploaded data earlier using **Import Data**, the import data page displays the details about the uploaded PST and ZIP (MSG and EML) files and the status of upload process. Else, the page does not show any record.

2. On the top-right corner of the page, the application displays the available limit for uploading the files. Ensure that you have sufficient limit available for uploading the files.
3. Click **Import**

The application displays the **Upload PST or ZIP(MSG/EML) file and import data** page.

4. To browse for the files that you want to upload, either click **Add upload items** or click **Browse**. Search for and select the required files.

Note: The application displays a list of selected PST, ZIP, and CSV files. You can upload multiple PST and ZIP (MSG and EML) files, and one CSV mapping files simultaneously. To remove the files that are added but do not need to be uploaded for some reason, click the Delete icon in the corresponding row.

5. In the **Import Type** column, do the following:

- If you have selected a PST file for uploading, ensure that the **Import Type** is displayed as PST by default.

The list of PST files is displayed along with the mapped email IDs that are populated in the **Owner Email** field from the selected CSV file.

- If you have selected a ZIP file for uploading, select the **Import Type** as MSG or EML.

For example, if the ZIP file contains the MSG files, you must select Import type as MSG. If the ZIP file contains the EML files, you must select Import type as EML.

- If you have selected the CSV mapping file and if that file finds a valid PST and Account ID, then the account email ID appears in the **Owner Email** field.

You can select or clear this check box for your entries and update the owner email field.

6. In the **Journal Address** column, select an appropriate journal address for each item.
7. By default, the **Archive message in sender's and recipients' archive** check box is selected for all the selected files.

If you clear this check box, the application displays the following error message.

At least one archive option should be selected to process the PST file

1. Select the **Archive messages in PST owner's archive** check box if you need to archive messages in the PST owner's archive along with the sender's and recipients' archive.
2. Ensure that all the error messages for the selected messages are resolved. Else, the **Upload** button remains disabled.
3. Click **Upload** to send the file to the server, and do not refresh the page during the upload of the files.

The **Import Data** page displays the status of files that you have uploaded.

4. Expand individual rows to view the import history of items uploaded. It provides details such as import start and end dates, total items in a file, number of items imported, number of items failed, number of non-email items, number of oversized items, and error messages if any.

The following statuses are shown with file entry:

STATUS	DESCRIPTION
Upload in progress	Uploading the files
Upload complete	File upload process completed.
Import in progress	File is in import process.
Queued For import	Job is in queue and waiting to be picked for Import process.
Error	Error occurred while importing file.
Import complete	All found items are imported.
Import partially successful	All found items are not imported (contains some non email items or failed to import some items or oversized items).

Note: Summary and detailed report for the uploaded PST and ZIP files with the count and size of emails imported is available in the reports section of Arctera Management Console . See [Generating Messaging reports](#).

AD FS Configuration Guide

This section includes the following topics:

- [Configuring AD FS to work with Arctera Unified Platform](#)
- [Adding a relying party trust for Arctera Unified Platform](#)
- [Generating a signing certificate](#)

Configuring AD FS to work with Arctera Unified Platform

This section describes how to configure your Active Directory Federation Services (AD FS) environment to work with the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service. After you configure your AD FS environment and the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service, you can provide single sign-on access to Arctera Personal Archive users.

For information about the supported AD FS versions, see the [Arctera Unified Platform Compatibility List](#).

Note: These instructions apply to the provision of single sign-on access for Arctera Personal Archive users only. For assistance with the provision for Arctera eDiscovery and Arctera Management Console, contact Arctera Services & Support.

The following table describes the required steps to configure AD FS to work with the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service.

Steps to configure AD FS to work with the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service

ACTION	REFERENCE
Use the AD FS Management to add a relying party trust for Arctera Unified Platform.	See Adding a relying party trust for Arctera Unified Platform .
Generate and export a signing certificate from the AD FS Management for upload in Arctera Management Console.	See Generating a signing certificate .

These instructions do not provide information on how to set up your AD FS environment. Refer to the following Microsoft documentation for information on to set up your AD FS environment:

- [AD FS 2.0 \(Windows Server 2008 R2\)](#)
- [AD FS 2.1 \(Windows Server 2012\)](#)
- [AD FS 3.0 \(Windows Server 2012 R2\)](#)

Network clock synchronization requirements for SSO

Arctera Unified Platform honors the NotBefore and NotOnOrAfter conditions that are presented during Secure Assertion authentication and authorization exchanges.

We recommend that you review your SSO Authority/Identity Provider settings to understand the values that are presented to Arctera Unified Platform during the SAML exchange. You need to ensure that the NotBefore and NotOnOrAfter values and drift values are configured in a way that is secure but that does not inadvertently cause authentication issues. Arctera Unified Platform synchronizes with several external UTC time sources and we recommend that you do the same to minimize the drift between our networks. Refer to your Microsoft documentation for information about configuring these values in an AD FS environment.

For information on how to set a NotBeforeSkew condition to allow for time discrepancies, see the following article on our Support website:

<http://www.Arctera.com/docs/000097921>

Adding a relying party trust for Arctera Unified Platform

The first step to configure your AD FS environment is to add a relying party trust for Arctera Unified Platform.

Note: We recommend that you do not change the Index Value of the Endpoint from its default value. Changing the Index Value of the Endpoint can prevent the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service from working properly with your AD FS environment.

To add a relying party trust for Arctera Unified Platform:

1. Access the **AD FS Management** console.
2. In the left pane of the AD FS Management console, expand **Trust Relationships**, right-click **Relying Party Trusts**, and then click **Add Relying Party Trust**

3. In the **Welcome** panel of the Add Relying Party Trust Wizard, click **Start**
4. In the **Select Data Source** panel, select **Enter data about the relying party manually**, and then click **Next**
5. In the **Specify Display Name** panel, enter **Cloud Archive** in the **Display Name** field, and then click **Next**
6. In the **Choose Profile** panel, select a profile, and then click **Next**
7. In the **Configure Certificate** panel, click **Next** to skip this optional step.

Note: We recommend that you do not configure a certificate. Configuring a certificate prevents the Arctera Unified Platform authentication service from working properly with your AD FS environment.

8. In the **Configure URL** panel, select **Enable support for the SAML 2.0 WebSSO protocol**
9. In the **Configure URL** panel, enter the Entity ID from the **Your Trust Information** section on the **Authentication Management** page of Arctera Management Console in the **Relying party SAML 2.0 SSO service URL** field, and then click **Next**

Note: The Entity ID varies based on the location of your organization. If you cannot find the Entity ID for your organization, contact Arctera Services & Support.

10. In the **Configure Identifiers** panel, enter the Entity ID again in the **Relying party trust identifier** field, click **Add** to add the identifier, and then click **Next**
11. For AD FS 3.0 only, in the **Configure Multi-factor Authentication Now?** panel, select **I do not want to configure multi-factor authentication settings for this relying party trust at this time**, and then click **Next**
12. In the **Choose Issuance Authorization Rules** panel, select **Permit all users to access this relying party**, and then click **Next**
13. In the **Ready to Add Trust** panel, review the configured settings, and then click **Next**
14. In the **Finish** panel, select **Open the Edit Claim Rules dialog for this relying party trust when the wizard closes**, and then click **Close**
15. In the **Edit Claim Rules for Cloud Archive** window, click **Add Rule**
16. In the **Select Rule Template** panel of the Add Transform Claim Rule Wizard, select **Send LDAP Attributes as Claims** in the **Claim rule template** field, and then click **Next**

17. In the **Configure Rule** panel, enter **Send Claims to Cloud Archive** in the **Claim rule name** section.
18. In the **Configure Rule** panel, select **Active Directory** in the **Attribute store** section.
19. In the **Configure Rule** panel, select the following sets of LDAP attributes and outgoing claim types in the **Mapping of LDAP attributes to outgoing claim types** section.

LDAP ATTRIBUTE	OUTGOING CLAIM TYPE
E-Mail-Addresses	E-Mail Address
Given-Name	Given Name
Surname	Surname

20. In the **Configure Rule** panel, click **Finish** to close the **Add Transform Claim Rule Wizard**.
21. In the **Edit Claim Rules for Cloud Archive** window, click **OK** to close the window.
22. In the AD FS Management Console, select **Cloud Archive** in the **Relying Party Trusts** pane.
23. In the **Cloud Archive** section of the **Actions** pane, click **Properties**.
24. In the **Cloud Archive Properties** window, select the **Advanced** tab.
25. In the **Secure hash algorithm** field, select one of the following algorithms:
 - SHA-1
 - SHA-256

Note: We recommend that you select the SHA-1 algorithm.

26. Click **OK** to close the **Cloud Archive Properties** window.

Generating a signing certificate

The second step to configure your AD FS environment is to generate a signing certificate for upload on the Authentication Management page in Arctera Management Console.

Note: We recommend that you use the default key size for the certificate, which is 2048 bits. The largest certificate key size that we currently support is 4096 bits.

To generate a signing certificate:

1. Do one of the following to access the AD FS Management console:
 - For AD FS 2.0 click **Start**, select **Administrative Tools**, and then click **AD FS 2.0 Management**.
 - For AD FS 2.1, click **Start**, enter** AD FS Management **in the **Search** field, and then press **Enter**.
 - For AD FS 3.0, click **Tools** in **Server Manager**, and then select **AD FS Management**.
2. In the left pane of the AD FS Management console, expand **Service**, and then select **Certificates**.
3. In the **Certificates** pane, select the certificate that is listed under the signing section.
4. In the **Actions** pane, click **View Certificate**
5. In the **Certificate** window, select the **Details** tab, and then click **Copy to File**
6. In the **Welcome** panel of the Certificate Export Wizard, click **Next**
7. In the **Export File Format** panel, select **Base-64 encoded X.509 (.CER)**, and then click **Next**
8. In the **File to Export** panel, enter a file path in the **File Name** field, and then click **Next**
9. In the **Completion** panel, review the specified information, and then click **Finish**
10. Click **OK** to close the export confirmation dialog box. You can find the exported certificate in the file location you previously designated.

Managing API App Registrations

This section includes the following topics:

- [About API app registration](#)
- [Viewing registered API apps](#)
- [Registering new API apps](#)
- [Modifying permissions of registered API apps](#)
- [Managing certificates for API apps](#)
 - [Adding certificates](#)
 - [Revoking existing certificates](#)
- [Managing secrets for API apps](#)
 - [Adding secrets](#)
 - [Revoking existing secrets](#)
- [Deleting registered API app](#)

About API app registration

The API **App Registration** feature enables Management Console Administrators to register API apps and manage the authentication credentials required by these apps to access Arctera APIs. This feature provides a structured mechanism to manage API apps and their associated client secrets, SSL certificates, and SSO certificates. It helps reduce manual intervention in credential management, especially in environments where certificates require frequent renewal.

Only users assigned the **Management Console Administrator** role can view this feature in the left navigation pane of the Arctera Unified Platform Management Console.

Administrators can assign permissions to registered API apps and manage their authentication credentials by generating, viewing, and revoking certificates and secrets during the app registration process.

Viewing registered API apps

Viewing registered API apps

You can view the registered apps and review their basic details, including assigned scope, access permissions, associated secrets and certificates, creation date, and the user who created the app.

To view registered API apps:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **App registrations**.

The **App registrations** page appears and provides a centralized view of all registered API apps and their associated access, credentials, and registration details.

2. Review the available details for each registered API app.

The app registration grid displays the following information:

FIELD	DESCRIPTION
Name	Displays the name of the registered API app.
Scope	Displays the scope assigned to the API app.
Access	Displays the permissions or access assigned to the API app.
Secrets	Displays the number of secrets associated with the API app.
Certificates	Displays the number of certificates associated with the API app.
Created	Displays the date when the API app was registered.
Created by	Displays the user who registered the API app.

From this page, you can manage or delete registered API apps as required.

Registering new API apps

Registering new API apps

As an administrator, you can register API apps and assign permissions that define the API operations these apps can perform.

To register a new API app:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **App registrations**.

The **App registrations** page appears.

2. Click **Register App**.

The **Register App** dialog box appears.

3. In the **App Name** field, enter a unique name for the API app.
4. Under **Permissions**, select the required permissions for the API app.

The available permissions are:

PERMISSION	DESCRIPTION
Manage Certificates	Allows the API app to upload certificates through API.
View Certificates	Allows the API app to read certificate status through API.

5. Click **Register**.

The API app is registered and appears in the list of registered apps on the **App registrations** page.

Modifying permissions of registered API apps

Modifying permissions of registered API apps

You can modify the permissions assigned to a registered API app to control the API operations that the app can perform. The App Registration details page displays the permissions currently assigned to the API app and allows you to update them as required.

To modify permissions of a registered API app:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **App registrations**. The **App registrations** page appears.
2. Select the registered API app for which you want to modify permissions. The app details page appears.
3. Click **Edit Permissions**. The permissions available for the API app appear. The available permissions include:

PERMISSION	DESCRIPTION
Manage Certificates	Allows the API app to upload certificates through API.
View Certificates	Allows the API app to read certificate status through API.

4. Select or clear the required permissions.
5. Click **Save**. The updated permissions are assigned to the API app, however, Changes take effect on the next token issued.

Managing certificates for API apps

Managing certificates for API apps

As an administrator, you can manage certificates associated with registered API apps to enable certificate-based authentication for accessing Arctera APIs. You can add new certificates to an API app and revoke certificates that are no longer required.

Related topics:

- [Adding certificates](#)
- [Revoking existing certificates](#)

Adding certificates

You can add certificates to registered API apps to enable certificate-based authentication. You can upload a certificate file or provide a PEM-encoded certificate while adding a certificate.

To add a new certificate:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **App registrations**.

The **App registrations** page appears.

2. Select the API app for which you want to add a certificate.

The API app details page appears.

3. On the **Certificates** tab, click **Add Certificate**.

The **Add Certificate** dialog box appears.

4. In the **Certificate Name** field, enter a name for the certificate.
5. Upload the certificate file or paste the PEM-encoded certificate in the **Public Certificate (PEM)** field.
6. Click **Add Certificate**.

The certificate is added to the API app and appears in the certificate list.

Revoking existing certificates

You can revoke certificates associated with registered API apps when they are no longer required or should no longer be used for authentication.

To revoke a certificate:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **App registrations**.

The **App registrations** page appears.

2. Select the API app from which you want to revoke a certificate.

The API app details page appears.

3. On the **Certificates** tab, locate the certificate that you want to revoke.
4. Click the **Delete** icon corresponding to the certificate.

The certificate is removed from the API app.

Managing secrets for API apps

Managing secrets for API apps

As an administrator, you can manage secrets associated with registered API apps to enable secret-based authentication for accessing Arctera APIs. You can add new secrets to an API app and revoke secrets that are no longer required.

Related topics:

- [Adding secrets](#)
- [Revoking existing secrets](#)

Adding secrets

You can add secrets to registered API apps to enable secrets-based authentication.

To add a new certificate:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **App registrations**.

The **App registrations** page appears.

2. Select the API app for which you want to add a certificate.

The API app details page appears.

3. On the **Secrets** tab, click **Add Secret**.

The **Add Secret** dialog box appears.

4. In the **Certificate Name** field, enter a name for the secret security key.
5. Specify the expiry date for the secret security key.
6. Click **Create**.

The secret is added to the API app and appears in the secrets list.

Revoking existing secrets

You can revoke secrets associated with registered API apps when they are no longer required or should no longer be used for authentication.

To revoke a certificate:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **App registrations**.

The **App registrations** page appears.

2. Select the API app from which you want to revoke a secret.

The API app details page appears.

3. On the **Secrets** tab, locate the secret that you want to revoke.
4. Click the **Delete** icon corresponding to the secret.

The certificate is removed from the API app.

Deleting registered API app

Deleting registered API app

You can delete a registered API app when it is no longer required. Deleting an API app removes the app registration and prevents the app from being used to authenticate and access Arctera APIs.

To delete a registered API app:

1. In the left navigation pane, select **App registrations**.

The **App registrations** page appears.

2. Locate the API app that you want to delete.
3. Click the **Delete** icon corresponding to the API app.

The API app is removed from the list of registered apps.